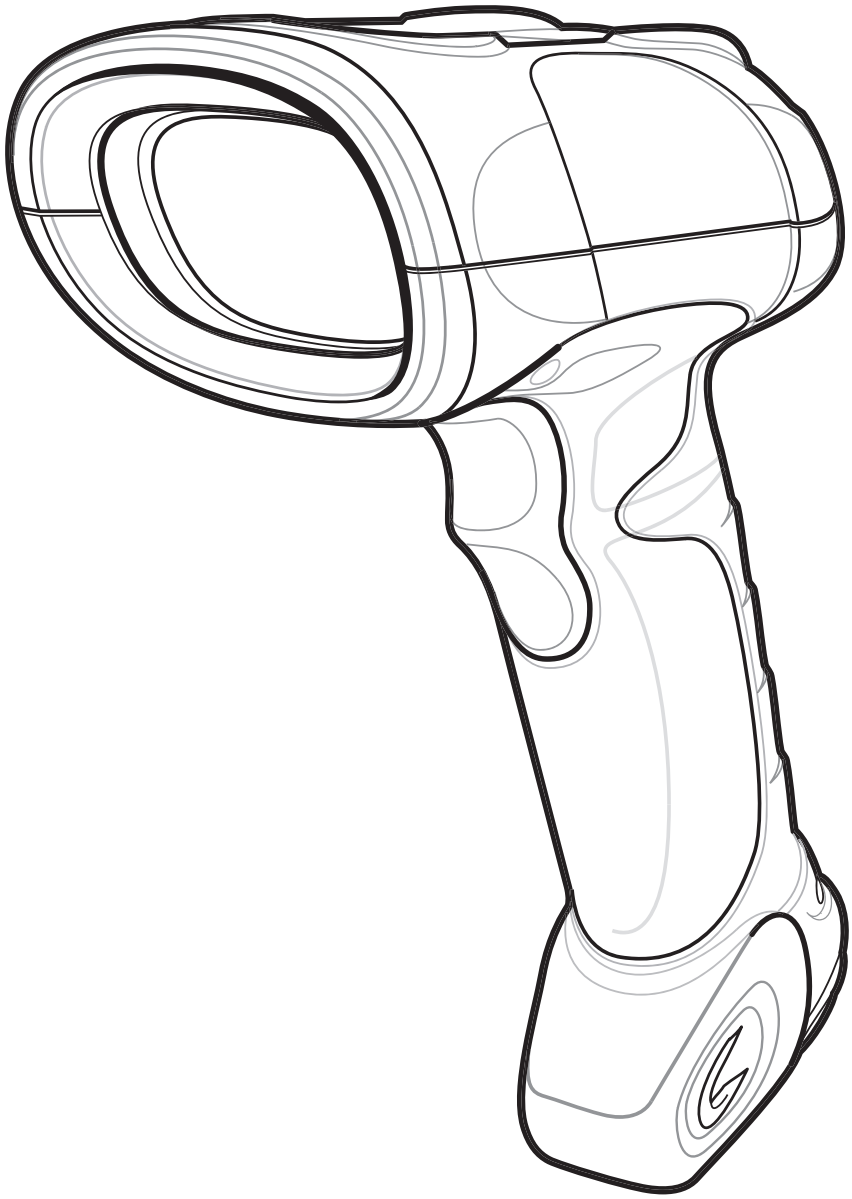
DS3508 Digital Scanner

Product Reference Guide



DS3508 Digital Scanner Product Reference Guide

72E-124801-07
Revision A
March 2012

© 2012 Motorola Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or used in any form, or by any electrical or mechanical means, without permission in writing from Motorola. This includes electronic or mechanical means, such as photocopying, recording, or information storage and retrieval systems. The material in this manual is subject to change without notice.

The software is provided strictly on an “as is” basis. All software, including firmware, furnished to the user is on a licensed basis. Motorola grants to the user a non-transferable and non-exclusive license to use each software or firmware program delivered hereunder (licensed program). Except as noted below, such license may not be assigned, sublicensed, or otherwise transferred by the user without prior written consent of Motorola. No right to copy a licensed program in whole or in part is granted, except as permitted under copyright law. The user shall not modify, merge, or incorporate any form or portion of a licensed program with other program material, create a derivative work from a licensed program, or use a licensed program in a network without written permission from Motorola. The user agrees to maintain Motorola’s copyright notice on the licensed programs delivered hereunder, and to include the same on any authorized copies it makes, in whole or in part. The user agrees not to decompile, disassemble, decode, or reverse engineer any licensed program delivered to the user or any portion thereof.

Motorola reserves the right to make changes to any software or product to improve reliability, function, or design.

Motorola does not assume any product liability arising out of, or in connection with, the application or use of any product, circuit, or application described herein.

No license is granted, either expressly or by implication, estoppel, or otherwise under any Motorola Solutions, Inc., intellectual property rights. An implied license only exists for equipment, circuits, and subsystems contained in Motorola products.

Motorola, MOTO, MOTOROLA SOLUTIONS and the Stylized M Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Motorola Trademark Holding, LLC and are used under license. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

This media, or Motorola Product, may include Motorola Software, Commercial Third Party Software, and Publicly Available Software.

The Motorola Software that may be included on this media, or included in the Motorola Product, is Copyright (c) by Motorola, Inc., and its use is subject to the licenses, terms and conditions of the agreement in force between the purchaser of the Motorola Product and Motorola, Inc.

The Commercial Third Party Software that may be included on this media, or included in the Motorola Product, is subject to the licenses, terms and conditions of the agreement in force between the purchaser of the Motorola Product and Motorola, Inc., unless a separate Commercial Third Party Software License is included, in which case, your use of the Commercial Third Party Software will then be governed by the separate Commercial Third Party License.

The Publicly Available Software that may be included on this media, or in the Motorola Product, is listed below. The use of the listed Publicly Available Software is subject to the licenses, terms and conditions of the agreement in force between the purchaser of the Motorola Product and Motorola Solutions, Inc., as well as, the terms and conditions of the license of each Publicly Available Software package. Copies of the licenses for the listed Publicly Available Software, as well as, all attributions, acknowledgements, and software information details, are included below. Motorola is required to reproduce the software licenses, acknowledgments and copyright notices as provided by the Authors and Owners, thus, all such information is provided in its native language form, without modification or translation.

The Publicly Available Software in the list below is limited to the Publicly Available Software included by Motorola. The Publicly Available Software included by Commercial Third Party Software or Products, that is used in the Motorola Product, are disclosed in the Commercial Third Party Licenses, or via the respective Commercial Third Party Publicly Available Software Legal Notices.

Publicly available software list:

Name:	Regular Expression Evaluator
Version:	8.3
Description:	Compiles and executes regular expressions
Software Site:	http://www.freebsd.org/cgi/cvsweb.cgi/src/lib/libc/regex/
Source Code:	No Source Distribution Obligations. Motorola will not provide nor distribute the Source Code for the Regular Expression Evaluator.
License:	BSD Style License

© 1992 Henry Spencer.

© 1992, 1993 The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to Berkeley by Henry Spencer of the University of Toronto. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Motorola Solutions, Inc.
One Motorola Plaza
Holtsville, New York 11742-1300
http://www.motorolasolutions.com.

Warranty

For the complete Motorola Solutions hardware product warranty statement, go to:
http://www.motorola.com/enterprisemobility/warranty.

Revision History

Changes to the original manual are listed below:

Change	Date	Description
-01 Rev A	09/2009	Initial release.
-02 Rev A	11/2009	Update: - Presentation Mode Field of View' bar codes - Supported baud rates for RS232.
-03 Rev A	02/2010	Add UID. Update DPM information.
-04 Rev A	04/2010	Remove reference to Synapse (not supported); remove Regulatory information as the complete Regulatory requirements appear in the Quick Start Guide; update IEC definition in Glossary.
-05 Rev A	03/2011	Add: Decode Pager Motor Duration, Fuzzy 1D Processing, PDF Prioritization, Prioritization Timeout, Mobile Phone/Display Mode, CDC USB Com Port Emulation, Cute, PDF417, Data Matrix, QR Codes, Aztec/Aztec Rune, Micro PDF, Maxicode, Polling Interval, Quick Emulation, OCR, Coupon Report, Korean 3 of 5, Australian Post Format, Databar Limited Security Level. Update: Nixdorf Mode A and B columns, Inverse 1D defaults, Inverse Data Matrix defaults. Remove: Matrix 2 of 5 Redundancy.
-06 Rev A	2/2012	Add DS3508-ER configuration parameters: Trigger Modes, Torch Mode, Smart LED Mode, Focus Modes. Add DS3508-ER decode zones and technical specifications.
-07 Rev A	3/2012	Add notes to indicate that the DS3508-ER and DS3508-DP do not support Multicode Mode, and that the DS3508-ER does not support imaging preferences.

Table of Contents

About This Guide

Introduction xv
Configurations xv
Chapter Descriptions xvi
Notational Conventions xvii
Related Documents xvii
Service Information xviii

Chapter 1: Getting Started

Introduction 1-1
Interfaces 1-2
Unpacking 1-2
Setting Up the Digital Scanner 1-3
Installing the Interface Cable 1-3
Removing the Interface Cable 1-4
Connecting Power (if required) 1-4
Configuring the Digital Scanner 1-4
Accessories 1-5
Required Accessories 1-5
Optional Accessories 1-5

Chapter 2: Scanning

Introduction 2-1
Beeper Definitions 2-2
LED Definitions 2-4
Scanning 2-5
Presentation Mode (DS3508-SR/HD/DP) 2-5
Hand-Held Scanning 2-6
DS3508-SR/HD/DP Aiming 2-7
Decode Ranges 2-9
Decode Ranges 2-10

Chapter 3: Maintenance & Technical Specifications

Introduction 3-1
Maintenance 3-1
Troubleshooting 3-2
Technical Specifications 3-5
Digital Scanner Signal Descriptions 3-7

Chapter 4: User Preferences & Miscellaneous Digital Scanner Options

Introduction 4-1
Scanning Sequence Examples 4-2
Errors While Scanning 4-2
User Preferences/Miscellaneous Options Parameter Defaults 4-2
User Preferences 4-5
Set Default Parameter 4-5
Parameter Bar Code Scanning 4-6
Decode Pager Motor Enable 4-7
Trigger Mode 4-9
Beep After Good Decode 4-11
Beeper Volume 4-11
Beeper Tone 4-12
Beeper Duration 4-13
Suppress Power-up Beeps 4-13
Hands-Free Mode 4-14
Presentation Performance Mode 4-14
Digital Scanner Activity Modes 4-15
Fuzzy 1D Processing 4-23
Picklist Mode 4-24
PDF Prioritization 4-25
PDF Prioritization Timeout 4-26
DPM Scanning 4-27
Continuous Bar Code Read 4-28
Decode Session Timeout 4-28
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol 4-29
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols 4-29
Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern 4-30
Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern 4-31
Presentation Mode Field of View 4-32
Mobile Phone/Display Mode 4-33
Decoding Illumination (Hand-Held Mode only) 4-34
Torch Mode (DS3508-ER Only) 4-35
Smart LED Mode (DS3508-ER Only) 4-36
Focus Mode 4-37
Multicode Mode (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD) 4-38
Multicode Expression (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD) 4-39
Multicode Mode Concatenation (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD) 4-44
Multicode Concatenation Symbology (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD) 4-45
Multicode Troubleshooting 4-46
Miscellaneous Scanner Parameters 4-48
Transmit Code ID Character 4-48

Prefix/Suffix Values 4-49
Scan Data Transmission Format 4-50
FN1 Substitution Values 4-51
Scan Data Transmission Format (continued) 4-51
Transmit “No Read” Message 4-52
UID Parsing 4-53

Chapter 5: Imaging Preferences
Introduction 5-1
Scanning Sequence Examples 5-2
Errors While Scanning 5-2
Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults 5-2
Imaging Preferences 5-4
Operational Modes 5-4
Image Capture Illumination 5-5
Gain/Exposure Priority for Snapshot Mode 5-6
Snapshot Mode Timeout 5-7
Snapshot Aiming Pattern 5-7
Image Cropping 5-8
Crop to Pixel Addresses 5-9
Image Size (Number of Pixels) 5-10
Image Brightness (Target White) 5-11
JPEG Image Options 5-11
JPEG Target File Size 5-12
JPEG Quality and Size Value 5-12
Image Enhancement 5-13
Image File Format Selector 5-14
Bits Per Pixel 5-15
Signature Capture 5-16
Signature Capture File Format Selector 5-17
Signature Capture Bits Per Pixel 5-18
Signature Capture Width 5-19
Signature Capture Height 5-19
Signature Capture JPEG Quality 5-19
Video View Finder 5-20
Video View Finder Image Size 5-20

Chapter 6: USB Interface
Introduction 6-1
Connecting a USB Interface 6-2
USB Parameter Defaults 6-3
USB Host Parameters 6-4
USB Device Type 6-4
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking 6-5
USB Country Keyboard Types - Country Codes 6-6
USB Keystroke Delay 6-8
USB CAPS Lock Override 6-8
USB Ignore Unknown Characters 6-9

Emulate Keypad 6-9
Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero 6-10
USB Keyboard FN 1 Substitution 6-10
Function Key Mapping 6-11
Simulated Caps Lock 6-11
Convert Case 6-12
USB Static CDC 6-12
USB Polling Interval 6-13
Quick Keypad Emulation 6-15
ASCII Character Set for USB 6-16

Chapter 7: RS-232 Interface
Introduction 7-1
Connecting an RS-232 Interface 7-2
RS-232 Parameter Defaults 7-3
RS-232 Host Parameters 7-4
RS-232 Host Types 7-6
Baud Rate 7-8
Parity 7-9
Data Bits 7-9
Stop Bit Select 7-10
Check Receive Errors 7-10
Hardware Handshaking 7-11
Software Handshaking 7-13
Host Serial Response Time-out 7-15
RTS Line State 7-16
Beep on <BEL> 7-16
Intercharacter Delay 7-17
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options 7-18
Ignore Unknown Characters 7-18
ASCII Character Set for RS-232 7-19

Chapter 8: IBM 468X / 469X Interface
Introduction 8-1
Connecting to an IBM 468X/469X Host 8-2
IBM Parameter Defaults 8-3
IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters 8-4
Port Address 8-4
Convert Unknown to Code 39 8-5

Chapter 9: Keyboard Wedge Interface
Introduction 9-1
Connecting a Keyboard Wedge Interface 9-2
Keyboard Wedge Parameter Defaults 9-3
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters 9-4
Keyboard Wedge Host Types 9-4
Keyboard Wedge Country Types - Country Codes 9-5

Ignore Unknown Characters 9-7
Keystroke Delay 9-7
Intra-Keystroke Delay 9-8
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation 9-8
Caps Lock On 9-9
Caps Lock Override 9-9
Convert Wedge Data 9-10
Function Key Mapping 9-10
FN1 Substitution 9-11
Send Make and Break 9-11
Keyboard Maps 9-12
ASCII Character Set for Keyboard Wedge 9-13
Introduction 10-1

Chapter 10: OCR Programming
OCR Parameter Defaults 10-2
OCR Programming Parameters 10-3
Enable/Disable OCR-A 10-3
OCR-A Variant 10-3
Enable/Disable OCR-B 10-5
OCR-B Variant 10-6
Enable/Disable MICR E13B 10-9
Enable/Disable US Currency Serial Number 10-10
OCR Orientation 10-10
OCR Lines 10-12
OCR Minimum Characters 10-12
OCR Maximum Characters 10-13
OCR Security Level 10-13
OCR Subset 10-14
OCR Quiet Zone 10-14
OCR Bright Illumination 10-15
OCR Template 10-16
OCR Check Digit Modulus 10-25
OCR Check Digit Multiplier 10-26
OCR Check Digit Validation 10-27

Chapter 11: Symbologies
Introduction 11-1
Scanning Sequence Examples 11-1
Errors While Scanning 11-2
Symbology Parameter Defaults 11-2
UPC/EAN 11-7
Enable/Disable UPC-A 11-7
Enable/Disable UPC-E 11-7
Enable/Disable UPC-E1 11-8
Enable/Disable EAN-8/JAN-8 11-8
Enable/Disable EAN-13/JAN-13 11-9
Enable/Disable Bookland EAN 11-9

Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals 11-10
User-Programmable Supplementals 11-13
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy 11-13
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID Format 11-14
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit 11-14
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit 11-15
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit 11-15
UPC-A Preamble 11-16
UPC-E Preamble 11-17
UPC-E1 Preamble 11-18
Convert UPC-E to UPC-A 11-19
Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A 11-19
EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend 11-20
Bookland ISBN Format 11-21
UCC Coupon Extended Code 11-22
Coupon Report 11-23
ISSN EAN 11-24
Code 128 11-25
Enable/Disable Code 128 11-25
Set Lengths for Code 128 11-25
Enable/Disable GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128) 11-26
Enable/Disable ISBT 128 11-27
ISBT Concatenation 11-28
Check ISBT Table 11-29
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy 11-29
Code 39 11-30
Enable/Disable Code 39 11-30
Enable/Disable Trioptic Code 39 11-30
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 11-31
Code 32 Prefix 11-31
Set Lengths for Code 39 11-32
Code 39 Check Digit Verification 11-33
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit 11-33
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion 11-34
Code 39 Buffering - Scan & Store 11-34
Code 93 11-37
Enable/Disable Code 93 11-37
Set Lengths for Code 93 11-37
Code 11 11-39
Code 11 11-39
Set Lengths for Code 11 11-39
Code 11 Check Digit Verification 11-41
Transmit Code 11 Check Digits 11-42
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF) 11-42
Enable/Disable Interleaved 2 of 5 11-42
Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5 11-43
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification 11-45
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit 11-45
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 11-46
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF) 11-46

Enable/Disable Discrete 2 of 5 11-46
Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5 11-47
Codabar (NW - 7) 11-49
Enable/Disable Codabar 11-49
Set Lengths for Codabar 11-49
CLSI Editing 11-51
NOTIS Editing 11-51
MSI 11-52
Enable/Disable MSI 11-52
Set Lengths for MSI 11-52
MSI Check Digits 11-54
Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) 11-54
MSI Check Digit Algorithm 11-55
Chinese 2 of 5 11-55
Enable/Disable Chinese 2 of 5 11-55
Matrix 2 of 5 11-56
Enable/Disable Matrix 2 of 5 11-56
Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5 11-57
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit 11-58
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit 11-58
Korean 3 of 5 11-59
Enable/Disable Korean 3 of 5 11-59
Inverse 1D 11-60
Postal Codes 11-61
US Postnet 11-61
US Planet 11-61
Transmit US Postal Check Digit 11-62
UK Postal 11-62
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit 11-63
Japan Postal 11-63
Australian Postal 11-64
Australia Post Format 11-65
Netherlands KIX Code 11-66
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail 11-66
UPU FICS Postal 11-67
GS1 DataBar 11-68
GS1 DataBar-14 11-68
GS1 DataBar Limited 11-68
GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 11-69
GS1 DataBar Expanded 11-70
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN 11-70
Composite 11-71
Composite CC-C 11-71
Composite CC-A/B 11-71
Composite TLC-39 11-72
UPC Composite Mode 11-72
Composite Beep Mode 11-73
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes 11-73
2D Symbologies 11-74
Enable/Disable PDF417 11-74

Enable/Disable MicroPDF417 11-74
Code 128 Emulation 11-75
Data Matrix 11-76
Data Matrix Inverse 11-77
Maxicode 11-78
QR Code 11-78
QR Inverse 11-79
MicroQR 11-79
Aztec 11-80
Aztec Inverse 11-80
Redundancy Level 11-81
Redundancy Level 1 11-81
Redundancy Level 2 11-81
Redundancy Level 3 11-81
Redundancy Level 4 11-82
Security Level 11-83
Intercharacter Gap Size 11-84
Report Version 11-84
Macro PDF Features 11-85
Flush Macro Buffer 11-85
Abort Macro PDF Entry 11-85

Chapter 12: 123Scan2
Introduction 12-1
Communication with 123Scan2 12-1
123Scan2 Requirements 12-1
Scanner SDK, Other Software Tools, and Videos 12-2

Chapter 13: Advanced Data Formatting
Introduction 13-1

Appendix A: Standard Default Parameters

Appendix B: Programming Reference
Symbol Code Identifiers B-1
AIM Code Identifiers B-3

Appendix C: Sample Bar Codes
Code 39 ..... C-1
UPC/EAN C-1
UPC-A, 100% C-1
EAN-13, 100% C-2
Code 128 ..... C-2
Interleaved 2 of 5 ..... C-2
GS1 DataBar-14 ..... C-3

PDF417 ..... C-3
Data Matrix C-3
Maxicode C-4
QR Code C-4
US Postnet C-4
UK Postal C-4

Appendix D: Numeric Bar Codes
Numeric Bar Codes D-1
Cancel D-2

Appendix E: ASCII Character Sets

Appendix F: Signature Capture Code
Introduction F-1
Code Structure F-1
Signature Capture Area F-1
CapCode Pattern Structure F-2
Start / Stop Patterns F-2
Dimensions F-3
Data Format F-3
Additional Capabilities F-4
Signature Boxes F-4

Glossary

Index

Tell Us What You Think...

About This Guide

Introduction

The *DS3508 Product Reference Guide* provides general instructions for setting up, operating, maintaining, and troubleshooting the DS3508 digital scanner.

Configurations

This guide includes the following configurations:

- DS3508-SR20005R – DS3508 digital scanner, standard range
- DS3508-HD20005R – DS3508 digital scanner, high density focus
- DS3508-DP20005R – DS3508 digital scanner, DPM
- DS3508-ER20005R - DS3508 digital scanner, extended range

Chapter Descriptions

Topics covered in this guide are as follows:

- *Chapter 1, Getting Started* provides a product overview, unpacking instructions, and cable connection information.
- *Chapter 2, Scanning* describes parts of the digital scanner, beeper and LED definitions, and how to use the scanner in hand-held and hands-free (presentation) modes.
- *Chapter 3, Maintenance & Technical Specifications* provides information on how to care for the digital scanner, troubleshooting, and technical specifications.
- *Chapter 4, User Preferences & Miscellaneous Digital Scanner Options* describes features frequently used to customize how data transmits to the host device and programming bar codes for selecting user preference features for the digital scanner.
- *Chapter 5, Imaging Preferences* provides imaging preference features and programming bar codes for selecting these features. Note that the DS3508-ER does not support these features.
- *Chapter 6, USB Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with a USB host.
- *Chapter 7, RS-232 Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with an RS-232 host, such as point-of-sale devices, host computers, or other devices with an available RS-232 port.
- *Chapter 8, IBM 468X / 469X Interface* describes how to set up the digital scanner with IBM 468X/469X POS systems.
- *Chapter 9, Keyboard Wedge Interface* describes how to set up a Keyboard Wedge interface with the digital scanner.
- *Chapter 10, OCR Programming* describes how to set up the digital scanner for OCR programming.
- *Chapter 11, Symbologies* describes all symbology features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features for the digital scanner.
- *Chapter 12, 123Scan2* (PC based scanner configuration tool) enables rapid and easy customized setup of Motorola Scanners.
- *Chapter 13, Advanced Data Formatting* briefly describes ADF, a means of customizing data before transmission to the host device, and includes a reference to the *ADF Programmer Guide*.
- *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* provides a table of all host devices and miscellaneous scanner defaults.
- *Appendix B, Programming Reference* provides a table of AIM code identifiers, ASCII character conversions, and keyboard maps.
- *Appendix C, Sample Bar Codes* includes sample bar codes of various code types.
- *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* includes the numeric bar codes to scan for parameters requiring specific numeric values.
- *Appendix E, ASCII Character Sets* provides ASCII character value tables.
- *Appendix F, Signature Capture Code* provides information on CapCode, a signature capture code that encloses a signature area on a document and allows a scanner to capture a signature.

Notational Conventions

The following conventions are used in this document:

- *Italics* are used to highlight the following:
  - Chapters and sections in this and related documents
  - Dialog box, window and screen names
  - Drop-down list and list box names
  - Check box and radio button names
- **Bold** text is used to highlight the following:
  - Key names on a keypad
  - Button names on a screen.
- bullets (•) indicate:
  - Action items
  - Lists of alternatives
  - Lists of required steps that are not necessarily sequential
- Sequential lists (e.g., those that describe step-by-step procedures) appear as numbered lists.
- Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) are used to denote default parameter settings.

Related Documents

- *DS3508 Quick Start Guide*, p/n 72-124802-xx - provides general information for getting started with the DS3508 digital scanner, and includes basic set up and operation instructions.

For the latest version of all guides, go to: http:supportcentral.motorola.com.

Service Information

If you have a problem using the equipment, contact your facility's technical or systems support. If there is a problem with the equipment, they will contact the Motorola Solutions Global Customer Support Center at: http://www.motorolasolutions.com/support.

When contacting Motorola Solutions support, please have the following information available:

- Serial number of the unit
- Model number or product name
- Software type and version number

Motorola responds to calls by e-mail, telephone or fax within the time limits set forth in service agreements.

If your problem cannot be solved by Motorola Support, you may need to return your equipment for servicing and will be given specific directions. Motorola is not responsible for any damages incurred during shipment if the approved shipping container is not used. Shipping the units improperly can possibly void the warranty.

If you purchased your product from a Motorola business partner, please contact that business partner for support.

Chapter 1 Getting Started

Introduction

The DS3508 combines superior 1D and 2D omnidirectional bar code scanning and sub-second image capture and transfer with a light-weight, hands-free/hand-held design. The digital scanner accommodates both hands-free use (in the scan stand) and hand-held use. Whether in hands-free (presentation) or hand-held mode, the digital scanner ensures comfort and ease of use for extended periods of time.

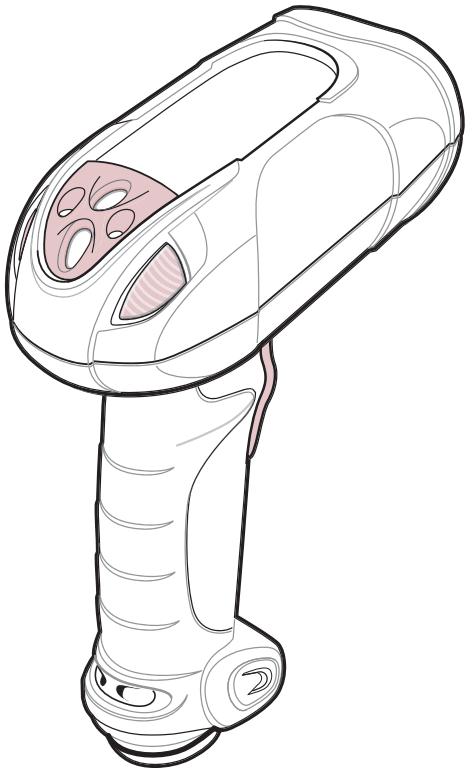


Figure 1-1 *DS3508 Digital Scanner*

NOTE Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.

Interfaces

The DS3508 digital scanner supports:

- USB connection to a host. The digital scanner autodetects a USB host and defaults to the HID keyboard interface type. Select other USB interface types by scanning programming bar code menus.This interface supports the following international keyboards (for Windows® environment): North America, German, French, French Canadian, Spanish, Italian, Swedish, UK English, Portuguese-Brazilian, and Japanese.
- Standard RS-232 connection to a host. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the host.
- Connection to IBM 468X/469X hosts. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the IBM terminal.
- Keyboard Wedge connection to a host. The host interprets scanned data as keystrokes. Scan bar code menus to set up communication of the digital scanner with the host. This interface supports the following international keyboards (for Windows® environment): North America, German, French, French Canadian, French Belgian, Spanish, Italian, Swedish, UK English, Portuguese-Brazilian, and Japanese.

Unpacking

Remove the digital scanner from its packing and inspect it for damage. If the scanner was damaged in transit, contact Motorola Solutions Support. See *page xviii* for contact information. **KEEP THE PACKING**. It is the approved shipping container; use this to return the equipment for servicing.

Setting Up the Digital Scanner

Installing the Interface Cable

NOTE Different hosts require different cables. The connectors illustrated in each host chapter are examples only. Connectors vary from those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Loosen the two screws on the cable clamp at the bottom of the scanner and gently pull the clamp away from the bottom of the scanner.

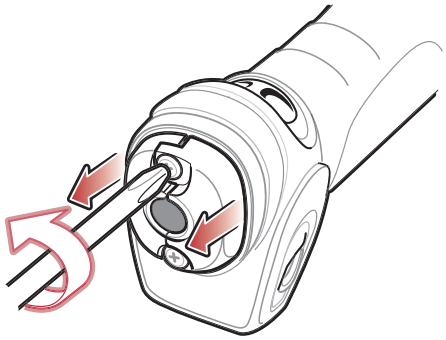


Figure 1-2 *Removing the Cable Clamp*

2. Open the clamp and plug the interface cable modular connector into the cable interface port on the bottom of the scanner handle.

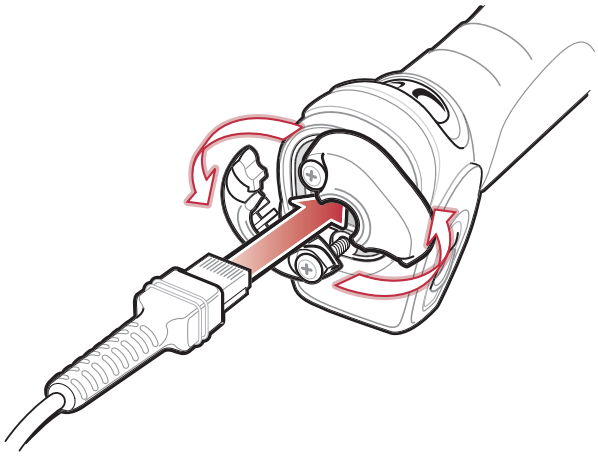


Figure 1-3 *Inserting the Interface Cable*

3. Gently tug the cable to ensure the connector is properly secured.

4. Close the clamp, push it back into place and tighten the screws on the clamp to secure the cable into the bottom of the scanner.

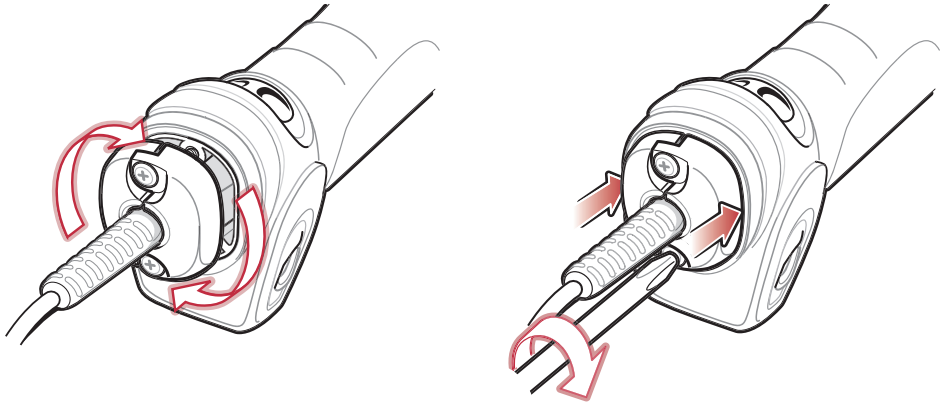


Figure 1-4 *Closing the Cable Clamp*

5. Connect the other end of the interface cable to the host (see the specific host chapter for information on host connections).

Removing the Interface Cable

1. Loosen the two screws on the cable clamp at the bottom of the scanner and gently pull the clamp away from the bottom of the scanner.
2. Open the clamp and unplug the interface cable modular connector from the cable interface port on the bottom of the scanner handle. Carefully slide out the cable.
3. Follow the steps for *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3* to connect a new cable.

Connecting Power (if required)

If the host does not provide power to the digital scanner, connect an external power supply:

1. Connect the interface cable to the base of the digital scanner, as described in *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*.
2. Connect the other end of the interface cable to the host (refer to the host manual to locate the correct port).
3. Plug the power supply into the power jack on the interface cable. Plug the other end of the power supply into an AC outlet.

Configuring the Digital Scanner

To configure the digital scanner use the bar codes included in this manual. See *Chapter 4, User Preferences & Miscellaneous Digital Scanner Options* and *Chapter 5, Imaging Preferences* for information about programming the digital scanner using bar code menus. Also see each host-specific chapter to set up connection to a specific host type.

Accessories

Required Accessories

The digital scanner requires an interface cable and may require a power supply. These items can be purchased from Motorola.

Optional Accessories

Contact Motorola to purchase the optional accessories in*Table 1-1* for the DS3508.

Table 1-1 *Optional Accessories*

Accessory	Part Number
Scanner Belt Holster	11-35035-01R
Intellistand for DS3508	20-54090-07R (see *page 2-5*).
Desk Top Holder	20-67176-01R
Multi-Mount Stand	12-44267-01R
Tool Balancer	50-15400-03

Chapter 2 Scanning

Introduction

This chapter provides beeper and LED definitions, techniques involved in scanning bar codes, general instructions and tips about scanning, and decode zone diagrams.

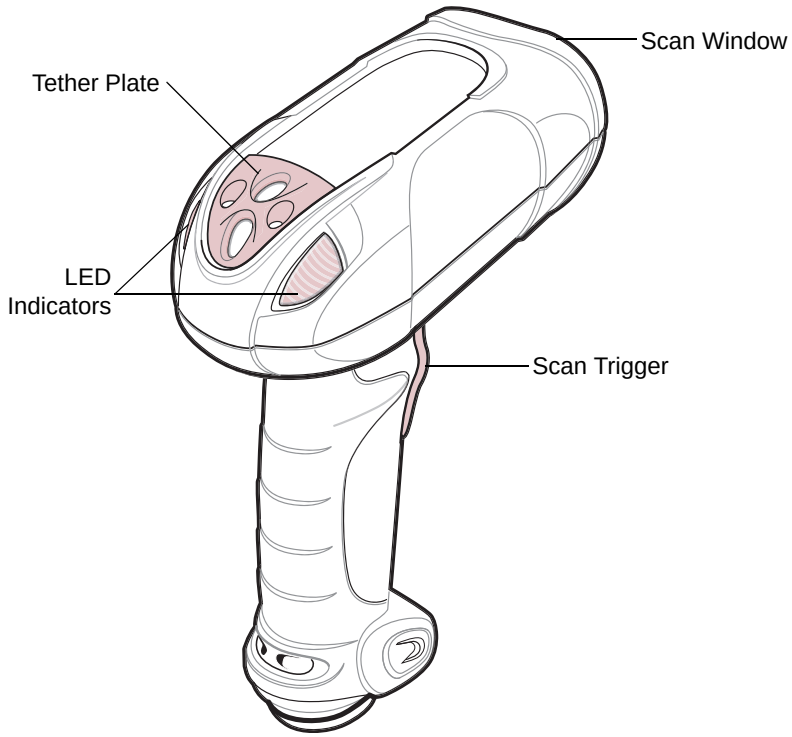


Figure 2-1 *Parts*

Beeper Definitions

The digital scanner issues different beep sequences and patterns to indicate status. *Table 2-1* defines beep sequences that occur during both normal scanning and while programming the digital scanner.

Table 2-1 *Beeper Definitions*

Beeper Sequence	Indication
Standard Use	
Low/medium/high beeps	Power up.
Short high beep	A bar code symbol was decoded (if decode beeper is enabled).
4 long low beeps	Transmission error.
5 low beeps	Conversion or format error.
Low/low/low/extra low beeps	RS-232 receive error.
High beep	The digital scanner detected a <BEL> character over RS-232.
Image Capture	
Low beep	Snapshot mode started or completed.
High/low beeps	Snapshot mode timed out.
Parameter Menu Scanning	
Low/high beeps	Input error; incorrect bar code, programming sequence, or **Cancel** scanned.
High/low beeps	Keyboard parameter selected. Enter value using numeric bar codes.
High/low/high/low beeps	Successful program exit with change in parameter setting.
Code 39 Buffering	
High/low beeps	New Code 39 data was entered into the buffer.
3 long high beeps	Code 39 buffer is full.
High/low/high beeps	The Code 39 buffer was erased.
Low/high/low beeps	The Code 39 buffer was erased or there was an attempt to clear or transmit an empty buffer.
Low/high beeps	A successful transmission of buffered data.
Macro PDF	
2 low beeps	MPDF sequence buffered.
2 long low beeps	File ID error. A bar code not in the current MPDF sequence was scanned.
3 long low beeps	Out of memory. There is not enough buffer space to store the current MPDF symbol.

Table 2-1 *Beeper Definitions (Continued)*

Beeper Sequence	Indication
4 long low beeps	Bad symbology. Scanned a 1D or 2D bar code in a MPDF sequence, a duplicate MPDF label, a label in an incorrect order, or trying to transmit an empty or illegal MPDF field.
5 long low beeps	Flushing MPDF buffer.
Fast warble beep	Aborting MPDF sequence.
Low/high beeps	Flushing an already empty MPDF buffer.
Host Specific	
USB only	
4 short high beeps	The digital scanner has not completed initialization. Wait several seconds and scan again.
Low/medium/high beeps upon scanning a USB device type	Communication with the host must be established before the digital scanner can operate at the highest power level.
Low/medium/high beeps occur more than once	The USB host can put the digital scanner in a state where power to the scanner is cycled on and off more than once. This is normal and usually happens when the PC cold boots.
RS-232 only	
1 short high beep	A <BEL> character is received and Beep on <BEL> is enabled.

LED Definitions

In addition to beep sequences, the digital scanner uses a two-color LED to indicate status. *Table 2-2* defines LED colors that display during scanning.

Table 2-2 *Standard LED Definitions*

LED	Indication
Hand-Held Scanning Standard Use	
Green	A bar code was successfully decoded.
Red	Transmission error, conversion or format error, or RS-232 receive error.
Off	No power is applied to the digital scanner, or the scanner is on and ready to scan.
Presentation (Hands-Free) Scanning Standard Use	
Green	The scanner is on and ready to scan.
Momentarily Off	A bar code was successfully decoded.
Red	Transmission error, conversion or format error, or RS-232 receive error.
Off	No power is applied to the digital scanner, or the scanner is in low power mode.
Parameter Programming	
Green	Number expected. Enter value using numeric bar codes. Successful program exit with change in parameter setting.
Red	Input error: incorrect bar code, programming sequence, or Cancel scanned.
ADF Programming	
Green	Enter another digit. Add leading zeros to the front if necessary. Enter another alphabetic character or scan the **End of Message** bar code. All criteria or actions cleared for current rule, continue entering rule. Delete last saved rule. The current rule is left intact. All rules deleted.
Blinking Green	Enter another criterion or action, or scan the **Save Rule** bar code.
Green after Blinking	Rule saved. Rule entry mode exited. Cancel rule entry. Rule entry mode exited because of an error or the user asked to exit rule entry.
Red	Out of rule memory. Erase some existing rules, then try to save rule again. Entry error, wrong bar code scanned, or criteria/action list is too long for a rule. Re-enter criterion or action.

Scanning

The DS3508 has a built-in, light-weight stand to easily accommodate both hands-free (presentation) and hand-held scanning.

NOTE Certain areas of the digital scanner's handle may feel warm at times. This is normal.

NOTE Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.

Presentation Mode (DS3508-SR/HD/DP)

The optional Intellistand adds greater flexibility to scanning operation. When you place the digital scanner in the stand's "cup," the scanner's built-in sensor places the scanner in presentation (hands-free) mode. When you remove the digital scanner from the stand it operates in its normal hand-held mode.

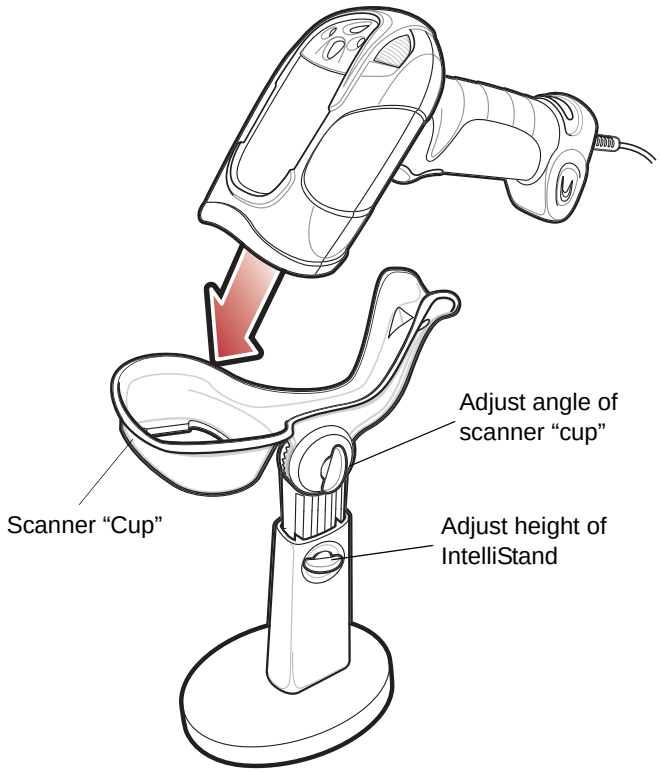


Figure 2-2 *Scanning in Hands-Free Mode*

To operate the digital scanner in the Intellistand:

1. Connect the digital scanner to the host (see the appropriate host chapter for information on host connections).
2. Insert the digital scanner in the Intellistand by placing the front of the digital scanner into the stand's "cup" (see *Figure 2-2*).
3. Use the Intellistand's adjustment knobs to adjust the height and angle of the digital scanner.
4. Center the symbol in the aiming pattern.

5. Upon successful decode, the digital scanner beeps and the LED turns green. For more information on beeper and LED definitions, see *Table 2-1 on page 2-2* and *Table 2-2 on page 2-4*.

NOTE Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.

Hand-Held Scanning

Aim the digital scanner at a bar code and pull the trigger to decode.

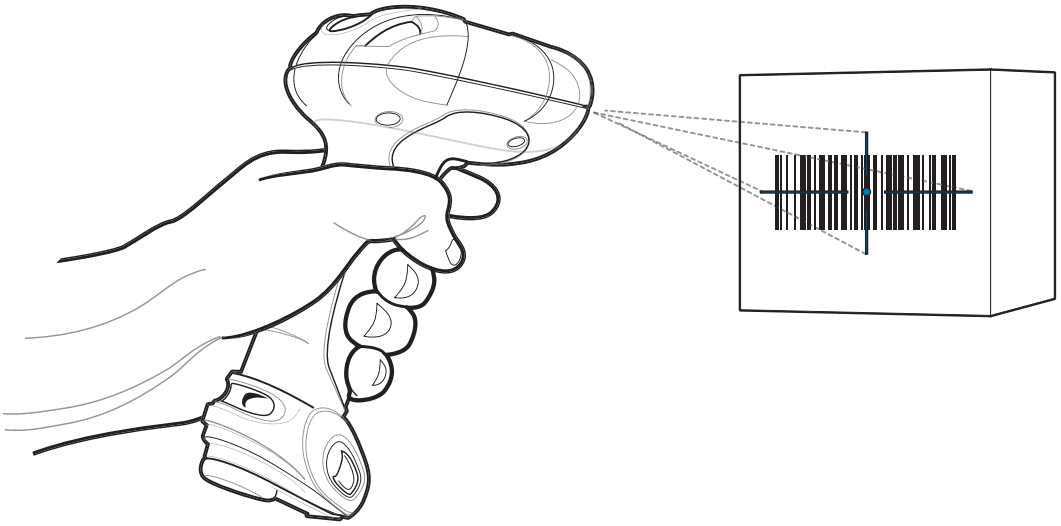


Figure 2-3 *Scanning in Hand-Held Mode: DS3508-SR/HD/DP*

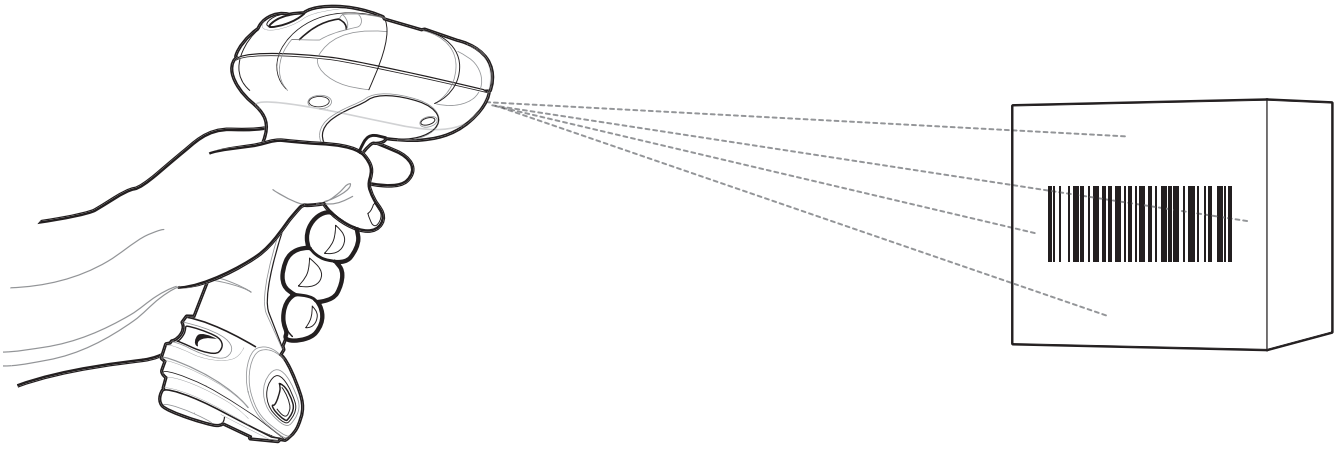


Figure 2-4 *Scanning in Hand-Held Mode: DS3508-ER*

DS3508-SR/HD/DP Aiming

When scanning, the DS3508-SR/HD/DP projects a red laser aiming pattern which allows positioning the bar code within its field of view. See *Decode Ranges on page 2-9* for the proper distance to achieve between the digital scanner and a bar code.

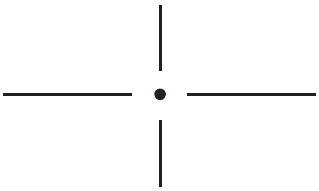


Figure 2-5 *DS3508-SR/HD/DP Aiming Pattern*

If necessary, the digital scanner turns on its red LEDs to illuminate the target bar code.To scan a bar code, center the symbol in any orientation within the aiming pattern. Be sure the entire symbol is within the rectangular area formed by the cross pattern.

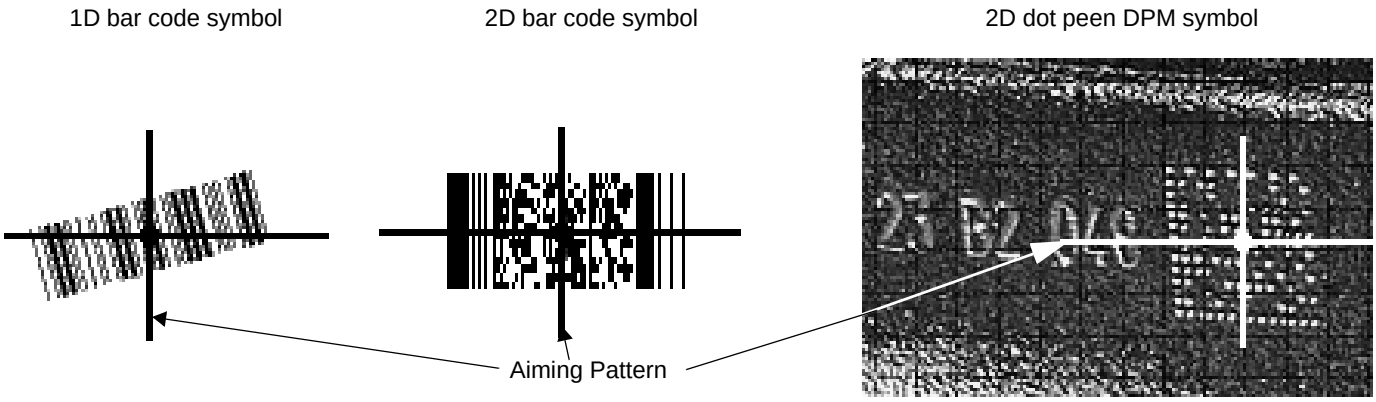


Figure 2-6 *Scanning Orientation with Aiming Pattern*

NOTE Scanning Direct Part Mark (DPM) bar codes with the DS3508-DP20005R digital scanner: Due to the reflective nature of some surfaces used with DPM bar codes (see *Figure 2-6*), it may be necessary to tilt the scanner at an angle relative to the target (Motorola recommends 25-45 degrees). For example, when scanning a 15 mil dot peen Data matrix bar code marked on an aluminum surface with the DS3508-DP20005R, present the target between two and three inches from the nose of the scanner, and tilt the scanner at a 30 degree angle.

When scanning standard (non-DPM) bar codes with any configuration of the DS3508 digital scanner, follow the standard aiming instructions described in *DS3508-SR/HD/DP Aiming on page 2-7*.

The digital scanner can also read a bar code presented within the aiming pattern but not centered. The top examples in *Figure 2-7* show acceptable aiming options, while the bottom examples can not be decoded.

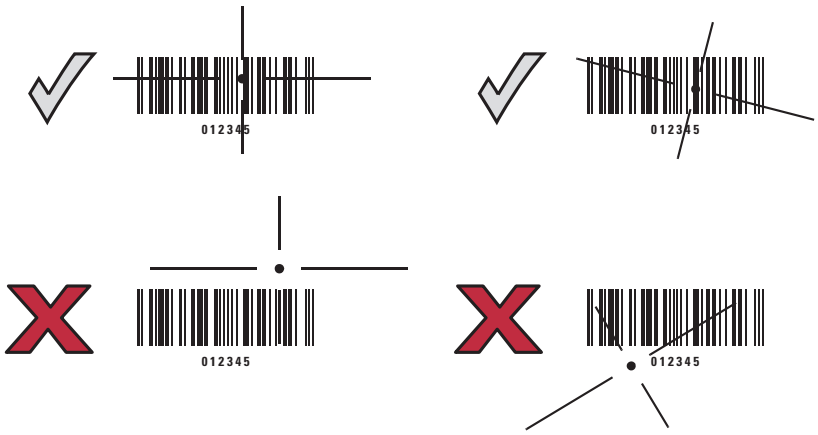


Figure 2-7 *Acceptable and Incorrect Aiming*

Decode Ranges

DS3508-SR/HD/DP

Table 2-3 *DS3508-SR/HD/DP Depth of Field*

Symbol Density	DS3508-SR	DS3508-HD/DS3508-DP
Code 39 - 3 mil	N/A	1.10 in. - 1.60 in. 2.79 cm - 4.06 cm
Code 39 - 4 mil	2.60 in. - 4.50 in. 6.60 cm - 11.43 cm	Contact - 3.5 in. Contact - 8.89 cm
Code 39 - 5 mil	1.00 in. - 6.30 in. 2.54 cm - 16.00 cm	Contact - 4.2 in. Contact - 10.67 cm
Code 39 - 7.5 mil	Contact - 10.10 in. Contact - 25.65 cm	Contact - 5.4 in. Contact - 13.72 cm
Code 39 - 20 mil	1.00 in. - 20.90 in. 2.54 cm - 53.09 cm	1.10 in. - 9.20 in. 2.79 cm - 23.37 cm
100% UPC - 13 mil	0.90 in. - 15.10 in. 2.29 cm - 38.35 cm	0.80 in. - 6.20 in. 2.03 cm - 15.75 cm
PDF417 - 6.67 mil	2.70 in. - 6.10 in. 6.86 cm - 15.49 cm	Contact - 3.70 in. Contact - 9.40
PDF417 - 10 mil	0.40 in. - 9.30 in. 1.02 cm - 23.62 cm	Contact - 4.50 in. Contact - 11.43 cm
PDF417 - 15 mil	3.30 in. - 14.80 in. 8.38 cm - 37.59 cm	3.20 in. - 5.60 in. 8.13 cm - 14.22 cm
Data Matrix - 4 mil	N/A	1.00 in. - 2.10 in. 2.54 cm - 5.33 cm
Data Matrix - 5 mil	N/A	0.40 in. - 2.70 in. 1.02 cm - 6.86 cm
Data Matrix - 7.5 mil	2.10 in. - 5.50 in. 5.33 cm - 13.97 cm	Contact - 3.50 in. Contact - 8.89 cm
Data Matrix - 10 mil	1.10 in. - 7.10 in. 2.79 cm - 18.03 cm	Contact - 4.40 in. Contact - 11.18 cm
QR Code - 4 mil	N/A	1.10 in. - 1.40 in. 2.79 cm - 3.56 cm

Table 2-3 *DS3508-SR/HD/DP Depth of Field (Continued)*

Symbol Density	DS3508-SR	DS3508-HD/DS3508-DP
QR Code - 5 mil	N/A	0.50 in. - 2.20 in. 1.27 cm - 5.59 cm
QR Code - 7.5 mil	N/A	Contact - 3.30 in. Contact - 8.38 cm
QR Code - 10 mil	1.50 in. - 6.10 in. 3.81 cm - 15.49 cm	Contact - 4.00 in. Contact - 10.16 cm

DS3508-ER

Table 2-4 *DS3508-ER Depth of Field*

Symbol Density	Depth of Field
Code 39 - 7.5 mil	8.50 in. - 34.00 in. 21.59 cm - 86.36 cm
Code 39 - 10 mil	8.00 in. - 41.50 in. 20.32 cm - 105.41 cm
Code 128 - 15 mil	7.00 in. - 47.50 in. 17.78 cm - 120.65 cm
Code 39 - 20 mil	* - 88.00 in. * - 223.52 cm
Code 39 - 55 mil	* - 205.00 in. * - 520.70 cm
Code 39 - 100 mil	* - 335.00 in. * - 850.90 cm
Code 39 - 100 mil reflective	* - 340.00 in. * - 863.60 cm
Data Matrix - 10 mil	8.25 in. - 16.50 in. 20.96 cm - 41.91 cm
Data Matrix - 55 mil	* - 89.50 in. * - 227.33 cm
Data Matrix - 100 mil	* - 168.50 in. * - 427.99 cm
Data Matrix - 314 mil	* - 450.00 in. * - 1143.00 cm
*** Dependent on length of bar codes.**	

Chapter 3 Maintenance & Technical Specifications

Introduction

This chapter provides suggested digital scanner maintenance, troubleshooting, technical specifications, and signal descriptions (pinouts).

Maintenance

Cleaning the scan window is the only maintenance required. A dirty window can affect scanning accuracy.

- Do not allow abrasive material to touch the window.
- Remove any dirt particles with a damp cloth.
- Wipe the window using a tissue moistened with ammonia/water.
- Do not spray water or other cleaning liquids directly into the window.

Troubleshooting

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
The aiming pattern does not appear when pressing the trigger.	No power to the digital scanner.	If the configuration requires a power supply, re-connect the power supply.
	Incorrect host interface cable is used.	Connect the correct host interface cable.
	Interface/power cables are loose.	Re-connect cables.
	Digital scanner is disabled.	For IBM 468x and USB IBM hand-held, IBM table top, and OPOS modes, enable the digital scanner via the host interface. Otherwise, see the technical person in charge of scanning.
	If using RS-232 Nixdorf B mode, CTS is not asserted.	Assert CTS line.
	Aiming pattern is disabled.	Enable the aiming pattern. See *Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern on page 4-30*.
Digital scanner emits short low/short medium/short high beep sequence (power-up beep sequence) more than once.	The USB bus may put the digital scanner in a state where power to the scanner is cycled on and off more than once.	Normal during host reset.
Digital scanner emits aiming pattern, but does not decode the bar code.	Digital scanner is not programmed for the correct bar code type.	Program the digital scanner to read that type of bar code. See *Chapter 11, Symbologies*.
	Bar code symbol is unreadable.	Scan test symbols of the same bar code type to determine if the bar code is defaced.
	The symbol is not completely inside aiming pattern.	Move the symbol completely within the aiming pattern.
Digital scanner emits 4 short high beeps during decode attempt.	Digital scanner has not completed USB initialization.	Wait several seconds and scan again.

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting (Continued)*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
Digital scanner decodes bar code, but does not transmit the data to the host.	Digital scanner is not programmed for the correct host type.	Scan the appropriate host type programming bar code. See the chapter corresponding to the host type.
	Interface cable is loose.	Re-connect the cable.
	If the digital scanner emits 4 long low beeps, a transmission error occurred.	Set the scanner's communication parameters to match the host's setting.
	If the digital scanner emits 5 low beeps, a conversion or format error occurred.	Configure the digital scanner's conversion parameters properly.
	If the digital scanner emits low/high/low beeps, it detected an invalid ADF rule.	Program the correct ADF rules. Refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide.*
	If the digital scanner emits high/low beeps, the scanner is buffering Code 39 data.	Normal scanning a Code 39 bar code and the Code 39 Buffering option is enabled.
Host displays scanned data incorrectly.	Digital scanner is not programmed to work with the host.	Scan the appropriate host type programming bar code.
		For RS-232, set the digital scanner's communication parameters to match the host's settings.
		For a Keyboard Wedge configuration, program the system for the correct keyboard type, and turn off the CAPS LOCK key.
		Program the proper editing options (e.g., UPC-E to UPC-A Conversion).
Digital scanner emits high/high/high/low beeps when not in use.	RS-232 receive error.	Normal during host reset. Otherwise, set the digital scanner's RS-232 parity to match the host setting.
Digital scanner emits low/high beeps during programming.	Input error or **Cancel** bar code was scanned.	Scan the correct numeric bar codes within range for the parameter programmed.
Digital scanner emits low/high/low/high beeps during programming.	Out of ADF parameter storage space.	Erase all rules and re-program with shorter rules.

Table 3-1 *Troubleshooting (Continued)*

Problem	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
Digital scanner emits low/high/low beeps.	Clearing Code 39 buffer.	Normal when scanning the Code 39 Buffering **Clear Buffer** bar code or upon attempt to transmit an empty Code 39 buffer.
Digital scanner emits a power-up beep after changing USB host type.	The USB bus re-established power to the digital scanner.	Normal when changing USB host type.
Digital scanner emits one high beep when not in use.	In RS-232 mode, a <BEL> character was received and Beep on <BEL> option is enabled.	Normal when **Beep on <BEL>** is enabled and the digital scanner is in RS-232 mode.

NOTE If after performing these checks the digital scanner still experiences problems, contact the distributor or call Motorola Solutions Support. See *page xviii* for the telephone numbers.

Technical Specifications

Table 3-2 *Technical Specifications*

Item	Description
Physical Characteristics	
Dimensions	7.34 in. H x 4.82 in. W x 2.93 in. D (18.65 cm H x 12.25 cm W x 7.43 cm D)
Weight (without cable)	12.8 oz. (363 gm)
Voltage and Current	5 volts ±10%, 330mA
Performance Characteristics	
Light Source	Aiming pattern: 650nm visible laser diode Illumination: 630nm LED
Imager Field of View	Standard Range Focus: 39.6 H x 25.7 V High Density Focus: 38.4 H x 24.9 V
Roll/Pitch/Yaw	DS3508-SR/HD/DP: ±360, ±65, ±60 DS3508-ER: ±360, ±60, ±65
Motion Tolerance	DS3508-SR/HD/DP: up to 100 in/sec (2.54 m/sec) in presentation mode (horizontal read rate) DS3508-ER: up to 60 in/sec (1.52 m/sec) for 100% 13 mil UPC; motion tolerance varies depending on code type, scan distance and print quality
Symbology Decode Capability	
1D	UPC/EAN (UPCA/UPCE/UPCE1/EAN-8/EAN-13/ JAN-8/JAN-13 plus supplementals, ISBN (Bookland), ISSN, Coupon Code), Code 39 (Standard, Full ASCII, Trioptic), Code 128 (Standard, Full ASCII, UCC/EAN-128, ISBT-128 Concatenated), Code 93, Codabar/NW7,Code 11 (Standard, Matrix 2 of 5), MSI Plessey, I 2 of 5 (Interleaved 2 of 5 / ITF, Discrete 2 of 5, IATA, Chinese 2 of 5), GS1 DataBar (Omnidirectional, Truncated, Stacked, Stacked Omnidirectional, Limited, Expanded, Expanded Stacked, Inverse), Base 32 (Italian Pharmacode)
PDF417 (and variants)	PDF417 (Standard, Macro), MicroPDF417 (Standard, Macro), Composite Codes (CC-A, CC-B, CC-C)
2D	TLC-39, Aztec (Standard, Inverse), MaxiCode, DataMatrix/ECC 200 (Standard, Inverse), QR Code (Standard, Inverse, Micro)
Postal	U.S. Postnet and Planet, U.K. Post, Japan Post, Australian Post, Netherlands KIX Code, Royal Mail 4 State Customer, UPU FICS 4 State Postal, USPS 4CB
DPM Marks (DPM unit only)	Datamatrix marks applied by dot-peening. All supported barcode types listed above marked by laser etching, chemical etching, ink marking, molding, stamping or casting methods on surfaces such as including metal, plastic, rubber or glass
IUID Support	Supports IUID parsing. The ability to read and separate IUID fields per application requirements

Table 3-2 *Technical Specifications (Continued)*

Item	Description
Nominal Working Range (Handheld)	See *Decode Ranges on page 2-9*.
Interfaces Supported	USB, RS-232, RS-485 (IBM 46xx Protocols), Keyboard Wedge, 123Scan^2
User Environment	
Operating Temperature	-4° to 122° F (-20° to 50° C)
Storage Temperature	-40° to 158° F (-40° to 70° C)
Humidity	5% to 95% relative humidity, non-condensing
Drop Specifications	Unit functions normally after repeated 6.5 ft. (2 m) drops to concrete
Ambient Light Immunity	Incandescent: 150 ft. candles (1,600 LUX) Sunlight: 8,000 ft. candles (86,000 LUX) Fluorescent: 150 ft. candles (1,600 LUX) Mercury Vapor: 150 ft. candles (1,600 LUX) Sodium Vapor: 150 ft. candles (1,600 LUX) Immune to direct exposure to normal office and factory lighting conditions, as well as direct exposure to sunlight
Electrostatic Discharge	DS3508-SR/HD/DP: Conforms to 20 kV air discharge and 8 kV contact discharge DS3508-ER: Conforms to ±15 kV air discharge and ±8 kV contact discharge

Digital Scanner Signal Descriptions

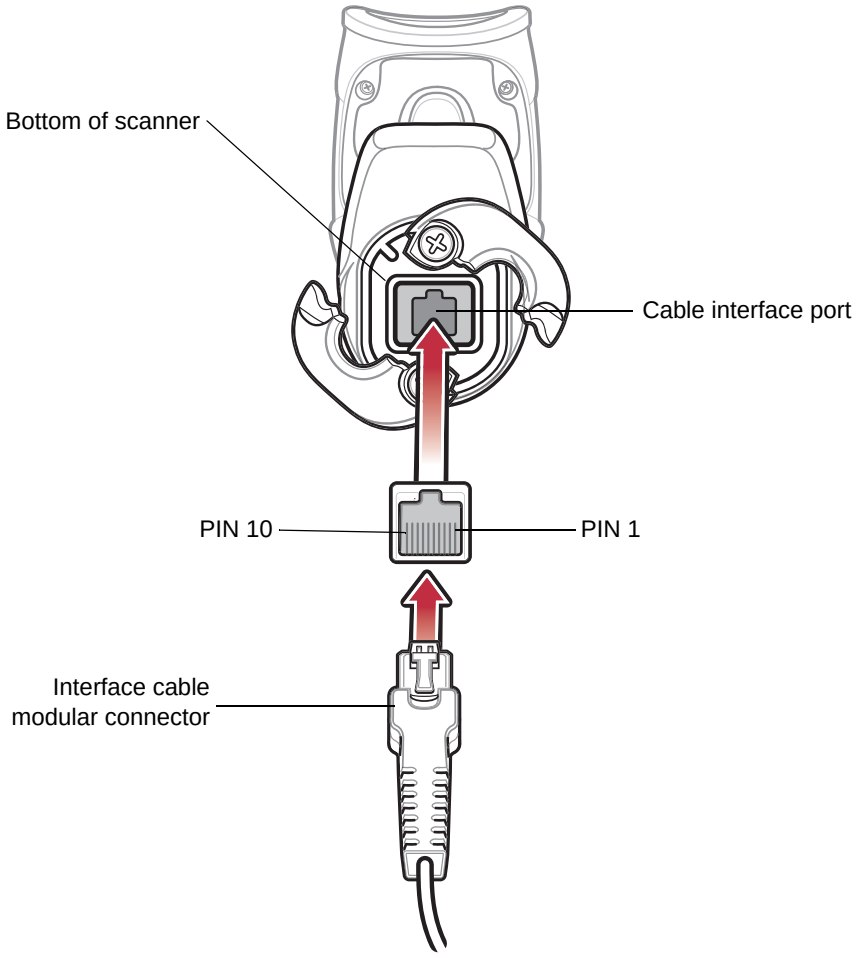


Figure 3-1 *Digital Scanner Cable Pinouts*

The signal descriptions in *Table 3-3* apply to the connector on the digital scanner and are for reference only.

Table 3-3 *Digital Scanner Signal Pin-outs*

Pin	IBM	RS-232	Keyboard Wedge	USB
1	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Jump to Pin 6
2	Power	Power	Power	Power
3	Ground	Ground	Ground	Ground
4	IBM_A(+)	TxD	KeyClock	Reserved
5	Reserved	RxD	TermData	D +
6	IBM_B(-)	RTS	KeyData	Jump to Pin 1
7	Reserved	CTS	TermClock	D -
8	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
9	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
10	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved

Chapter 4 User Preferences & Miscellaneous Digital Scanner Options

Introduction

You can program the digital scanner to perform various functions, or activate different features. This chapter describes each user preference feature and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.

The digital scanner ships with the settings shown in *Table 4-1 on page 4-2* (also see *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all host device and miscellaneous defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the digital scanner is powered down.

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen (when using the imaging engine). When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

If not using a USB cable, select a host type (see each host chapter for specific host information) after the power-up beeps sound. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connected to a new host.

To return all features to default values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-5*. Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks indicate (*)default values.

Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases, scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to set the beeper tone to high, scan the **High Frequency** (beeper tone) bar code listed under *Beeper Tone on page 4-12*. The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters, such as **Serial Response Time-Out** or **Data Transmission Formats**, require scanning several bar codes. See these parameter descriptions for this procedure.

Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

User Preferences/Miscellaneous Options Parameter Defaults

Table 4-1 lists defaults for user preferences parameters. To change the default values, scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-5*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 4-1 *User Preferences Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
User Preferences			
Set Default Parameter		Set Defaults	*4-5*
Parameter Bar Code Scanning	ECh	Enable	*4-6*
Decode Pager Motor	F1h 65h	Enable	*4-7*
Decode Pager Motor Duration	F1h 72h	500 msec	*4-7*
Trigger Mode	8Ah	Level (Standard)	*4-9*
Beep After Good Decode	38h	Enable	*4-11*
Beeper Tone	91h	Medium	*4-12*
Beeper Volume	8Ch	High	*4-11*
Beeper Duration	F1 74h	Medium	*4-13*
Suppress Power-up Beeps	F1h D1h	Do Not Suppress	*4-13*
Hands-Free Mode	F1h 76h	Enable	*4-14*
Presentation Performance Mode	F1 8Ah	Standard	*4-14*
Time Delay to Presentation Idle Mode	F1 97h	1 Minute	*4-16*

Table 4-1 *User Preferences Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Time Delay to Presentation Sleep Mode	F1 96h	1 Hour	4-18
Low Power Mode	80h	Disable	4-20
Time Delay to Low Power Mode	92h	1 Hour	4-21
Fuzzy 1D Processing	F1h 02h	Enable	4-23
Picklist Mode	F0h 92h	Disabled Always	4-24
PDF Prioritization	F1h CFh	Disable	4-25
PDF Prioritization Timeout	F1h D0h	200 ms	4-26
DPM Scanning	F1h 09h	Enable	4-27
Continuous Bar Code Read	F1 89h	Disable	4-28
Decode Session Timeout	88h	9.9 Sec	4-28
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol	89h	0.5 Sec	4-29
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols	90h	0.2 Sec	4-29
Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern	F0h 32h	Enable	4-30
Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern	F1h 4Eh	Enable for PDF	4-31
Presentation Mode Field of View	F1h 61h	Full	4-32
Mobile Phone/Display Mode	F1h CCh	Disable	4-33
Decoding Illumination	F0h, 2Ah	Enable	4-34
Torch Mode	F1h EBh	Enable	4-35
Smart LED Mode	F1h ECh	Enable	4-36
Focus Mode	F0h A6h	Auto-Ranging	4-37
Multicode Mode	F1h, A5h	Disable	4-38
Multicode Expression	F1h, 95h	1	4-39
Multicode Mode Concatenation	F1h, CDh	Disable	4-44
Multicode Concatenation Symbology	F1h, D2h	Concatenate as PDF417	4-45
Miscellaneous Options			
Transmit Code ID Character	2Dh	None	4-48
Prefix Value	63h, 69h	7013 <CR><LF>	4-49
Suffix 1 Value Suffix 2 Value	62h 68h 64h 6Ah	7013 <CR><LF>	4-49

Table 4-1 *User Preferences Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Scan Data Transmission Format	EBh	Data as is	*4-50*
FN1 Substitution Values	67h 6Dh	Set	*4-51*
Transmit “No Read” Message	5Eh	Disable	*4-52*
UID Parsing	n/a	Disable	*4-53*

User Preferences

Set Default Parameter

You can reset the digital scanner to two types of defaults: factory defaults or custom defaults. Scan the appropriate bar code below to reset the decoder to its default settings and/or set its current settings as custom defaults.

- **Set Defaults** - Scan this bar code to reset all default parameters as follows.
  - If you previously set custom defaults by scanning **Write to Custom Defaults**, scan **Set Defaults** to retrieve and restore the decoder's custom default settings.
  - If you did not set custom defaults, scan **Restore Defaults** to restore the factory default values listed in *Table A-1*.
- **Set Factory Defaults** - Scan this bar code to restore the factory default values listed in *Table A-1.* This deletes any custom defaults set.
- **Write to Custom Defaults** - Scan this bar code to set the current decoder settings as custom defaults. Once set, you can recover custom default settings by scanning **Restore Defaults**.

***Set Defaults**

Set Factory Defaults

Write to Custom Defaults

Parameter Bar Code Scanning

Parameter # ECh

To disable the decoding of parameter bar codes, including the **Set Defaults** parameter bar codes, scan the **Disable Parameter Scanning** bar code below. To enable decoding of parameter bar codes, scan **Enable Parameter Scanning**.

***Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning**
(01h)

Disable Parameter Bar Code Scanning
(00h)

Decode Pager Motor Enable

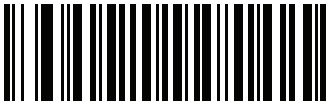
Parameter # F1h 65h

The scanner includes a pager motor which, when enabled, vibrates the scanner for a period of time when a successful decode occurs.

NOTE When the pager motor is enabled and the scanner is in IntelliStand, the pager motor disables until the scanner is removed from IntelliStand.

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable the pager motor. If enabled, scan the appropriate bar code to set the period of time in which to vibrate the scanner (see *Decode Pager Motor Duration* below).

Pager Motor Disable
(00h)

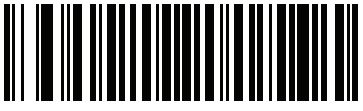


***Pager Motor Enable**
(01h)

Decode Pager Motor Duration

Parameter # F1h 72h

150 msec

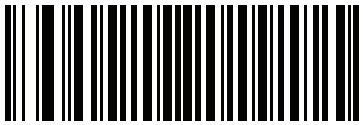


200 msec

Decode Pager Motor Enable (continued)

250 msec

300 msec



400 msec

***500 msec**

600 msec

750 msec

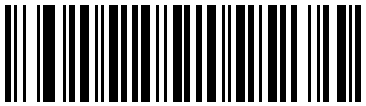
Trigger Mode

Parameter # 8Ah

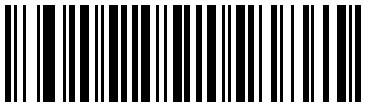
Select one of the following trigger modes for the digital scanner:

- **Level (Standard)** - Upon trigger pull, an aiming dot appears for a programmable duration of time. After this time, the aiming dot changes to a standard laser scanning beam for a full decode session. The laser scanning beam stays on until the *Decode Session Timeout on page 4-28* occurs, a decode occurs, or the trigger is released. If the trigger is released before the timeout expires, the laser shuts off and no decode occurs.
- **Two Stage Option 1 (DS3508-ER only)** - Upon trigger pull, an aiming dot appears. When the trigger is released, the aiming dot changes to a standard laser scanning beam for a full decode session. The laser scanning beam stays on for one-third of the currently configured decode timeout. If the trigger is pulled again while in a decode session, the scanner beam returns to an aiming dot.
- **Two Stage Option 2 (DS3508-ER only)** - Upon trigger pull, an aiming dot appears. When the trigger is released, the aiming dot turns off. Pulling the trigger twice quickly turns on the standard laser scanning beam for a full decode session. The laser scanning beam stays on until the *Decode Session Timeout* occurs, a decode occurs, or the trigger is released.
- **Presentation (Blink) (DS3508-SR/HD/DP only)** - The digital scanner activates decode processing when it detects a bar code in its field of view. After a period of non-use, the digital scanner enters a low power mode in which the LEDs turn off until the digital scanner senses motion.
- **Auto Aim (DS3508-SR/HD/DP only)** - The digital scanner's aiming pattern is consistently on when in auto aim mode. A trigger pull activates decode processing. After 2 seconds of inactivity the aiming pattern shuts off.

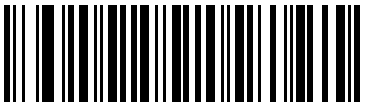
Trigger Mode (continued)



*** Level (Standard)**
(00h)



Two Stage Option 1 (DS3508-ER only)
(0Eh)



Two Stage Option 2 (DS3508-ER only)
(0Fh)

Presentation (Blink) (DS3508-SR/HD/DP only)
(07h)

Auto Aim (DS3508-SR/HD/DP only)
(09h)

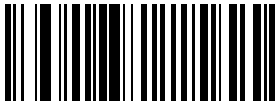
NOTE Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.

Beep After Good Decode

Parameter # 38h

Scan a bar code below to select whether or not the digital scanner beeps after a good decode. If selecting **Do Not Beep After Good Decode**, the beeper still operates during parameter menu scanning and to indicate error conditions.

***Beep After Good Decode**
(Enable)
(01h)



Do Not Beep After Good Decode
(Disable)
(00h)

Beeper Volume

Parameter # 8Ch

To select a beeper volume, scan the **Low Volume, Medium Volume**, or **High Volume** bar code.

Low Volume
(02h)

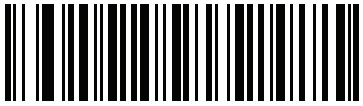
Medium Volume
(01h)

***High Volume**
(00h)

Beeper Tone

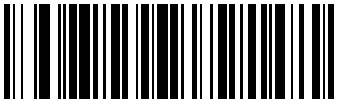
Parameter # 91h

To select a decode beep frequency (tone), scan one of the following bar codes.

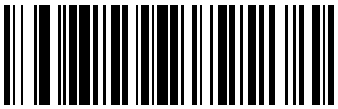


Off
(03h)

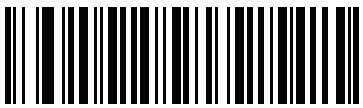
Low Tone
(02h)



***Medium Tone**
(01h)



High Tone
(00h)



Medium to High Tone (2-tone)
(04h)

Beeper Duration

Parameter # F1 74h

To select the duration for the beeper, scan one of the following bar codes.

Short
(00h)

*** Medium**
(01h)

Long
(02h)

Suppress Power-up Beeps

Parameter # F1h D1h

Select whether or not to suppress the digital scanner's power-up beeps.

*** Do Not Suppress Power-up Beeps**
(00h)

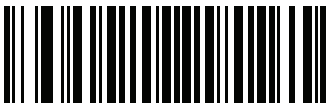
Suppress Power-up Beeps
(01h)

Hands-Free Mode

Parameter # F1h 76h

In hands-free mode, when you place the digital scanner in the scan stand, it automatically triggers when presented with a bar code. Lifting the digital scanner causes it to behave according to the setting of the *Trigger Mode on page 4-9*.

If you select **Disable Hands-Free Mode**, the digital scanner behaves according to the setting of the *Trigger Mode* regardless of whether it is hand-held or in the scan stand.



***Enable Hands-Free Mode**
(01h)

Disable Hands-Free Mode
(00h)

NOTE Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.

Presentation Performance Mode

Parameter # F1 8Ah

Select **Standard Presentation Mode** when presenting objects to the scanner. Select **Enhanced Presentation Mode** when swiping items underneath the scanner.

***Standard Presentation Mode**
(02h)

Enhanced Presentation Mode
(00h)

NOTE Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.

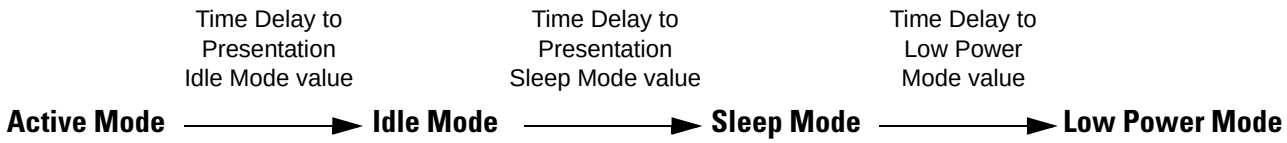
Digital Scanner Activity Modes

The digital scanner is capable of four modes of activity:

- **Active Mode** - The digital scanner uses full illumination for active scanning.
- **Idle Mode** - In presentation mode only, the digital scanner's illumination dims after a programmable time period. See *Time Delay to Presentation Idle Mode on page 4-16*. The digital scanner wakes when it is lifted or senses motion, upon presentation of a bar code, or upon a trigger pull.
- **Sleep Mode** - In presentation mode only, the digital scanner's illumination shuts off after a programmable time period after Idle Mode has expired. See *Time Delay to Presentation Sleep Mode on page 4-18*. The digital scanner wakes when it is lifted or senses motion, upon presentation of a bar code (depending on ambient light conditions), or upon a trigger pull.
- **Low Power Mode** - The digital scanner enters a low power consumption mode after Sleep Mode has expired, in which the LEDs turn off in order to conserve energy and prolong the life of the scanner. See *Low Power Mode*. In hand-held mode, this occurs immediately after the programmed *Time Delay to Low Power Mode*. In presentation mode, this occurs after idle mode and sleep mode. The digital scanner wakes when it is lifted, senses a trigger pull, or when the host attempts to communicate.

NOTE The digital scanner does not use Low Power Mode when connected to a USB or IBM host.

NOTE Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.


Time Delay to Presentation Idle Mode value
Time Delay to Presentation Sleep Mode value
Time Delay to Low Power Mode value
Active Mode
Idle Mode
Sleep Mode
Low Power Mode

Note: Time delays are cumulative.

Figure 4-1 *Power Levels*

Time Delay to Presentation Idle Mode

Parameter # F1 97h

In presentation mode, this parameter sets the time the digital scanner remains active before entering idle mode with dim illumination. The digital scanner wakes upon presentation of a bar code or a trigger pull.

Disable
(00h)

1 Second
(01h)

10 Seconds
(0Ah)

***1 Minute**
(11h)

5 Minutes
(15h)

15 Minutes
(1Bh)

Time Delay to Presentation Idle Mode (continued)

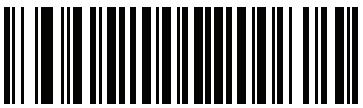
30 Minutes
(1Dh)

45 Minutes
(1Eh)

1 Hour
(21h)

3 Hours
(23h)

6 Hours
(26h)



9 Hours
(29h)

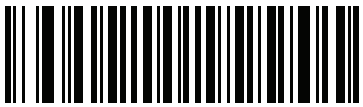
✓ ***NOTE*** Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.

Time Delay to Presentation Sleep Mode

Parameter # F1 96h

In presentation mode, this parameter sets the time the digital scanner remains active before entering sleep mode with no illumination. The digital scanner wakes when it senses motion, upon presentation of a bar code, or a trigger pull.

NOTE Digital scanner performance is not guaranteed in dim conditions.



Disable
(00h)

1 Second
(01h)

10 Seconds
(0Ah)

1 Minute
(11h)

5 Minutes
(15h)

NOTE Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.

Time Delay to Presentation Sleep Mode (continued)

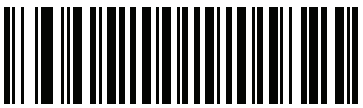
15 Minutes
(1Bh)

30 Minutes
(1Dh)

45 Minutes
(1Eh)

***1 Hour**
(21h)

3 Hours
(23h)



6 Hours
(26h)

9 Hours
(29h)

Low Power Mode

Parameter # 80h

If enabled, the digital scanner enters a low power consumption mode after Sleep Mode has expired, in which the LEDs turn off in order to conserve energy and prolong the life of the scanner. In hand-held mode, this occurs immediately after the programmed *Time Delay to Low Power Mode*. In presentation mode, this occurs after idle mode and sleep mode. The digital scanner wakes when it is lifted, senses a trigger pull, or when the host attempts to communicate.

If disabled, power remains on after each decode attempt.

***Disable Low Power Mode**
(00h)

Enable Low Power Mode
(01h)

Time Delay to Low Power Mode

Parameter # 92h

NOTE This parameter only applies when Low Power Mode is enabled.

This parameter sets the time the digital scanner remains active before entering lower power mode (after the applicable activity mode - see *Digital Scanner Activity Modes on page 4-15*). The digital scanner wakes upon trigger pull or when the host attempts to communicate with the digital scanner.

1 Second
(11h)

10 Seconds
(1Ah)

1 Minute
(21h)

5 Minutes
(25h)

15 Minutes
(2Bh)

Time Delay to Low Power Mode (continued)

30 Minutes
(2Dh)

45 Minutes
(2Eh)

***1 Hour**
(31h)

3 Hours
(33h)

6 Hours
(36h)

9 Hours
(39h)

Fuzzy 1D Processing

Parameter # F1h 02h

This option is enabled by default to optimize decode performance on 1D bar codes, including damaged and poor quality symbols. Disable this only if you experience time delays when decoding 2D bar codes, or in detecting a no decode.

*** Enable Fuzzy 1D Processing (01h)**

Disable Fuzzy 1D Processing (00h)

Picklist Mode

Parameter # F0h 92h

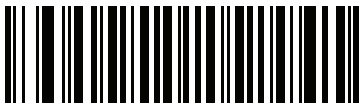
Picklist mode enables the digital scanner to decode only bar codes that are aligned under the laser crosshair. Select one of the following picklist modes for the digital scanner:

- **Disabled Always** - Picklist mode is always disabled.
- **Enabled in Hand-Held Mode** - Picklist mode is enabled when the digital scanner is out of hands-free mode and disabled when the digital scanner is in presentation mode.
- **Enabled in Hands-Free Mode** - Picklist mode is enabled when the digital scanner is in hands-free mode only.
- **Enabled Always** - Picklist mode is always enabled.

NOTE If you enabled DPM Scanning on *page 4-27*, disable Picklist Mode when scanning a DPM bar code. Picklist performance is not guaranteed for DPM bar codes.

***Disabled Always**
(00h)

Enabled in Hand-Held Mode
(01h)



Enabled in Hands-Free Mode
(03h)

Enabled Always
(02h)

NOTE Picklist Mode temporarily overrides the Disable Decode Aiming Pattern option. The Decode Aiming Pattern cannot be disabled when the following options are selected:

- Smart LED Mode is set to Enable (DS3508-ER configuration)
- Focus Mode is set to Auto-Ranging (DS3508-ER configuration)
- Picklist Mode is set to Enable (DS3508-ER and DS3508-SR configurations)

PDF Prioritization

Parameter # F1h CFh

Enable this feature to delay decoding a 1D bar code (Code 128) by the value specified in *PDF Prioritization Timeout*. During that time the digital scanner attempts to decode a PDF417 symbol (e.g., on a US driver's license), and if successful, reports this only. If it does not decode (can not find) a PDF417 symbol, it reports the 1D symbol after the timeout. The 1D symbol must be in the device's field of view for the digital scanner to report it. This parameter does not affect decoding other symbologies.

NOTE The 1D Code 128 bar code lengths include the following:
- 7 to 10 characters
- 14 to 17 characters
- 27 to 28 characters

In addition, a Code 39 bar code with the following lengths are considered to potentially be part of a US driver's license:
- 8 characters
- 12 characters.

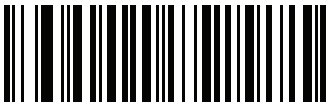
*** Disable PDF Prioritization (00h)**

Enable PDF Prioritization (01h)

PDF Prioritization Timeout

Parameter # F1h D0h

When *PDF Prioritization* is enabled, this timeout specifies how long the digital scanner attempts to decode a PDF417 symbol before reporting the 1D bar code in the field of view. Scan the following bar code, then scan four digits from *Numeric Bar Codes on page D-1* that specify the timeout in milliseconds. For example, to enter 400 ms, scan the following bar code, then scan 0400. The range is 0 to 5000 ms, and the default is 200 ms.



PDF Prioritization Timeout

DPM Scanning

Parameter # F1h 09h

Unlike bar codes that are typically printed on labels, a direct part mark (DPM) is a symbol that is marked directly on an item's surface for permanent identification. These symbols are marked using methods such as laser etching and dot peening (see *Figure 2-6 on page 2-7* for an example of a dot peen symbol). The DS3508-DP (DPM) reader scans these types of symbols.

NOTE When the DS3508-DP digital scanner is DPM enabled, the digital scanner reads all symbols including DPM, 1D, PDF417, etc. If you do not require DPM reading, scan **Disable DPM Scanning** to ensure optimum scanner performance.

If you enable **DPM Scanning**, disable *Picklist Mode on page 4-24* when scanning a DPM bar code. Picklist performance is not guaranteed for DPM bar codes.

Also, if you enable DPM Scanning, the scanner behaves as if the **Data Matrix Inverse Autodetect** setting is selected. When you disable DPM Scanning, the previous (user-selected) **Data Matrix Inverse** setting remains in effect. See*Data Matrix Inverse on page 11-77*.

To configure the DS3508-DP digital scanner for DPM reading:

1. If you disabled DPM scanning in the DS3508-DP digital scanner, scan **Enable DPM Scanning** below.
2. Before scanning a DPM bar code, ensure you enabled *Data Matrix Inverse on page 11-77*.

***Enable DPM Scanning (01h)**

Disable DPM Scanning (00h)

Continuous Bar Code Read

Parameter # F1 89h

Enable this to report every bar code while the trigger is pressed.

NOTE Motorola strongly recommends enabling *Picklist Mode on page 4-24* with this feature. Disabling Picklist Mode can cause accidental decodes when more than one bar code is in the imaging engine's field of view.

***Disable Continuous Bar Code Read (0h)**

Enable Continuous Bar Code Read (1h)

Decode Session Timeout

Parameter # 88h

This parameter sets the maximum time decode processing continues during a scan attempt. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.5 to 9.9 seconds. The default timeout is 9.9 seconds.

To set a Decode Session Timeout, scan the bar code below. Next, scan two numeric bar codes from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired on time. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. For example, to set a Decode Session Timeout of 0.5 seconds, scan the bar code below, then scan the **0** and **5** bar codes. To correct an error or change the selection, scan **Cancel** on *page D-2*.

Decode Session Timeout

Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol

Parameter # 89h

Use this option in presentation mode and Continuous Bar Code Read to prevent the beeper from continuously beeping when a symbol is left in the digital scanner's field of view. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.0 to 9.9 seconds. The default interval is 0.5 seconds.

To select the timeout between decodes for the same symbol, scan the bar code below, then scan two numeric bar codes from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired interval, in 0.1 second increments.

Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol

Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols

Parameter # 90h

Use this option in presentation mode and Continuous Bar Code Read to control the time the scanner is inactive between decoding different symbols. It is programmable in 0.1 second increments from 0.1 to 9.9 seconds. The default is 0.2 seconds.

To select the timeout between decodes for different symbols, scan the bar code below, then scan two numeric bar codes from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* that correspond to the desired interval, in 0.1 second increments.

Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols

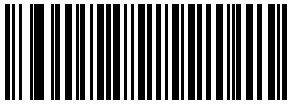
Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern

Parameter # F0h, 32h

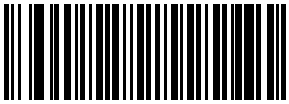
Select **Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern** to project the aiming pattern during bar code capture, **Disable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern** to turn the aiming pattern off, or **Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF** to project the aiming pattern when the digital scanner detects a 2D bar code.

This parameter does not apply to Snapshot Mode. See *Operational Modes on page 5-4*.

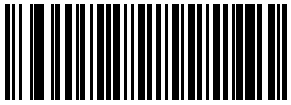
NOTE With *Picklist Mode on page 4-24* enabled, the decode aiming pattern flashes even when the **Decode Aiming Pattern** is disabled.



***Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern (02h)**



Disable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern (00h)



Enable Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF (03h)

NOTE Picklist Mode temporarily over-rides the Disable Decode Aiming Pattern option. The Decode Aiming Pattern cannot be disabled when the following options are selected:

- Smart LED Mode is set to Enable (DS3508-ER configuration)
- Focus Mode is set to Auto-Ranging (DS3508-ER configuration)
- Picklist Mode is set to Enable (DS3508-ER and DS3508-SR configurations)

Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern

Parameter # F1h, 4Eh

Select **Enable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern** to project the aiming pattern during bar code capture, **Disable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern** to turn the aiming pattern off, or **Enable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF** to project the aiming pattern when the digital scanner detects a 2D bar code.

This parameter does not apply to Snapshot Mode. See *Operational Modes on page 5-4*.

NOTE With *Picklist Mode on page 4-24* enabled, the decode aiming pattern flashes even when the **Decode Aiming Pattern** is disabled.

Enable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern (01h)

Disable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern (00h)

***Enable Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern on PDF (02h)**

NOTE Picklist Mode temporarily overrides the Disable Decode Aiming Pattern parameter. The Decode Aiming Pattern cannot be disabled (using the DS3508-SR and DS3508-ER configurations) when the following parameters/settings are selected:

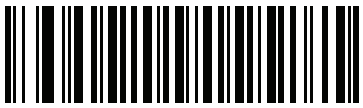
- Smart LED Mode is set to Enable (DS3508-ER configuration)
- Focus Mode is set to Auto-Ranging (DS3508-ER configuration)
- Picklist Mode is set to Enable (DS3508-ER and DS3508-SR configurations)

Presentation Mode Field of View

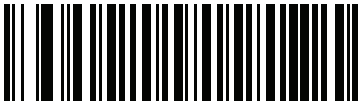
Parameter # F1h 61h

In presentation mode, by default the digital scanner searches the larger area of the aiming pattern (**Full Field of View**).

To search for a bar code in a smaller region around the aiming pattern's center cross in order to speed search time, select **Small Field of View** or **Medium Field of View**.



Small Field of View
(00h)



Medium Field of View
(01h)

***Full Field of View**
(02h)

NOTE Hands-free (presentation) scanning does not apply to the DS3508-ER configuration.

Mobile Phone/Display Mode

Parameter # F1h CCh

This mode improves bar code reading performance off mobile phones and electronic displays. Enable this in hand-held, hands-free, or both modes, or disable mode.

NOTE If you enable this mode, for best performance also select *Presentation Performance Mode on page 4-14* and enable *Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern on page 4-31*.

***Disable Mobile Phone/Display Mode**
(00h)

Enable in Hand-Held Mode
(01h)

Enable in Hands-Free Mode
(02h)

Enable in Both Modes
(03h)

NOTE **Torch Mode** does not function when **Mobile Phone/Display Mode** is enabled.

Decoding Illumination (Hand-Held Mode only)

Parameter # F0h, 2Ah

When in hand-held mode, selecting **Enable Decoding Illumination** causes the digital scanner to flash illumination to aid decoding. Select **Disable Decoding Illumination** to prevent the digital scanner from using decoding illumination.

Enabling illumination usually results in superior images. The effectiveness of the illumination decreases as the distance to the target increases.

***Enable Decoding Illumination**
(01h)

Disable Decoding Illumination
(00h)

Torch Mode (DS3508-ER Only)

Parameter # F1h EBh

When using the DS3508-ER, selecting **Enable Torch Mode** causes the digital scanner to provide illumination longer to optimize decode accuracy when scanning at an extended decode range (far distance of 5 feet or greater).

Select **Disable Torch Mode** to prevent the digital scanner from using Torch Mode.

Disable Torch Mode
(01h)

***Enable Torch Mode**
(00h)

NOTE **Torch Mode** does not function when **Mobile Phone/Display Mode** is enabled.

Smart LED Mode (DS3508-ER Only)

Parameter # F1h ECh

Selecting **Enable Smart LED Mode** optimizes decode accuracy when scanning near using the DS3508-ER digital scanner.

Select **Disable Smart LED Mode** to prevent the digital scanner from using Smart LED Mode.

Disable Smart LED Mode
(01h)

***Enable Smart LED Mode**
(00h)

NOTE When using **Smart LED Mode**, it is normal for the illumination to appear off center.

Focus Mode

Parameter # F0h A6h

Select the Focus Mode to control the working range of the DS3508-ER digital scanner.

- Select **Far** focus to optimize the digital scanner to read at its far position. Use this mode when scanning large bar codes in order to fit these bar codes in the digital scanner's field of view.
- Select **Near** focus to optimize the digital scanner to read at its near position. Use this mode when scanning small, high-density bar codes.
- Select **Alternating** focus to toggle between near and far focus position.
- Select **Auto-Ranging** focus to allow the digital scanner to control the focus operation.

Far
(00h)

Alternating
(02h)

Near
(01h)

***Auto-Ranging**
(03h)

NOTE When in Far Focus Mode, you may not be able to decode standard size parameter bar codes.

Multicode Mode (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD)

Parameter # F1h, A5h

Enable this parameter to allow multiple bar codes to decode upon one trigger event based on the programmed multicode expression. The digital scanner reports a successful decode and provides user indication only if it decodes all bar codes indicated by the multicode expression, otherwise the decode fails. Bar codes are transmitted in the order defined in the multicode expression. Disable this to operate in normal decode mode.

NOTES The DS3508-DP and DS3508-ER configurations do not support Multicode Mode.

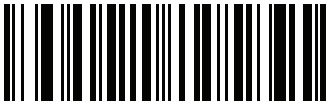
Enabling **Multicode Mode** disables *Picklist Mode*.

Multicode does not operate in presentation mode.

Do not use **Multicode Mode** if a trigger is set to **Laser Preferred Decoding**.

Do not use **Multicode Mode** if *Continuous Bar Code Read* is enabled.

When using this mode, always orient the digital scanner at the same distance and angle (perpendicular).



***Disable Multicode Mode (00h)**

Enable Multicode Mode (01h)

Multicode Expression (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD)

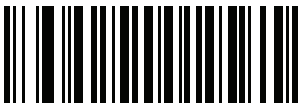
Parameter # F1h, 95h

Use this feature to program a multicode expression for *Multicode Mode (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD)* (grid method). The default is 1, which indicates any bar code.

NOTE The DS3508-DP and DS3508-ER configurations do not support this feature.

To set the multicode expression:

1. Scan the bar code below.
2. Scan bar codes from the alphanumeric keyboard in the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide* to define the expression.
3. Scan the **End of Message** bar code from the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide.*



Multicode Expression

Multicode Expression Syntax

Multicode Expression Syntax: [n] [Element 1]; [Element 2]; ... [Element n];
Where *n* is the number of elements in the overall expression.

The multicode expression describes the bar code(s) that the digital scanner can expect to find in an image. Each element represents one bar code in the digital scanner's field of view. The order of elements in the expression is the order in which bar code data from each element transmits to the host. Elements are defined using one or more of the following methods:

By Region. This type of element limits decoding to a specific area within the digital scanner's field of view. Region coordinates are defined as the top left and bottom right corners of the region, expressed in percentages of the field of view. These can range from 0% to 100%, or 0x00 to 0x64 in hex, for both horizontal and vertical axes. A region element is constructed as:

[R] [4] [Top, Left] [Bottom, Right]

Where:

- [R] is the character R
- [4] is 0x04, indicating there are four bytes thereafter to describe the region
- [Top, Left] are two values representing the top left corner of the region
- [Bottom, Right] are two values representing the bottom right corner of the region

By Code Type. An element can specify a specific bar code symbology to find and decode somewhere in the field of view. A code type element is constructed as:

[C] [2] [Code Type]

Where:

- [C] is the character C
- [2] is 0x02, indicating there are two bytes thereafter to describe the code type
- [Code Type] is the desired symbology's parameter number (see *Chapter 11, Symbologies*). For single-byte parameter numbers, extend the value to two bytes by adding 00 before the parameter number.

Notes

When defining multicode expressions consider the following:

- Use the Code Type specifier if there are bar codes of more than one code type in view.
- Always use the Region specifier when there are multiple bar codes of the same code type.
- When transmission order is important (the first element in the expression transmits first), use either type to define the order.
- When there are unwanted bar codes in view, filter them out in one of two ways:
  - Use Code Type to specify only the target bar codes.
  - Use Region to identify only the target bar codes.
- If the expression does not contain a Region specifier, scanning angle and distance do not matter. If you specify a region you must scan in a fixed orientation and at a fixed distance. Because of this, it is preferable to use the Code Type specifier rather than the Region specifier.
- When defining regions:
  - Defining a region much larger than the bar code improves tolerance to scan distance and angle, but can cause a decode of a nearby bar code instead of the target bar code. Therefore, for best performance define larger regions when only a few bar codes are in view and those in view are widely separated.
  - Defining a region close to (or smaller than) the target bar code improves the probability of decoding this bar code rather than one nearby, but scan distance and angle must be more accurate. Therefore, for best performance define small regions when many bar codes are in view or those in view are close together.
- Use Region elements to improve decode speeds by reducing the image area to search for the target bar code.
- Specifying Code Type may also improve decode speeds for some code types.
- Although you can scan parameter bar codes when multicode mode is enabled, be aware of the following: If the multicode expression defined a region(s), to scan a parameter bar code you must position the bar code within the first region defined in the expression. In some cases, this first region is not the center of the image and aiming at the parameter bar code does not result in a successful decode.

The following examples show the multicode expressions in both hex and decimal formats, however in the sample figures the values are decimal. Be sure to use the correct base numbering system when creating an expression. A region specified as 0x00 0x00 0x64 0x32 represents a region with coordinates of Top-Left (0,0) and Bottom Right (100,50).

Example 1

To decode one Code 128 bar code anywhere in the image (even when bar codes of other types are in view), as in *Figure 4-3*, program the expression as follows:

The expression in decimal is (formatted for readability):

1 C 2 0 8 ;

To program the expression via scanning parameters the sequence is (spaces are for readability):

[MultiCode-Expression] 01 C 02 00 08 ; [End Of Message]

To program the expression via host command (SSI/SNAPI) the sequence is:

0x01 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x08 0x3b

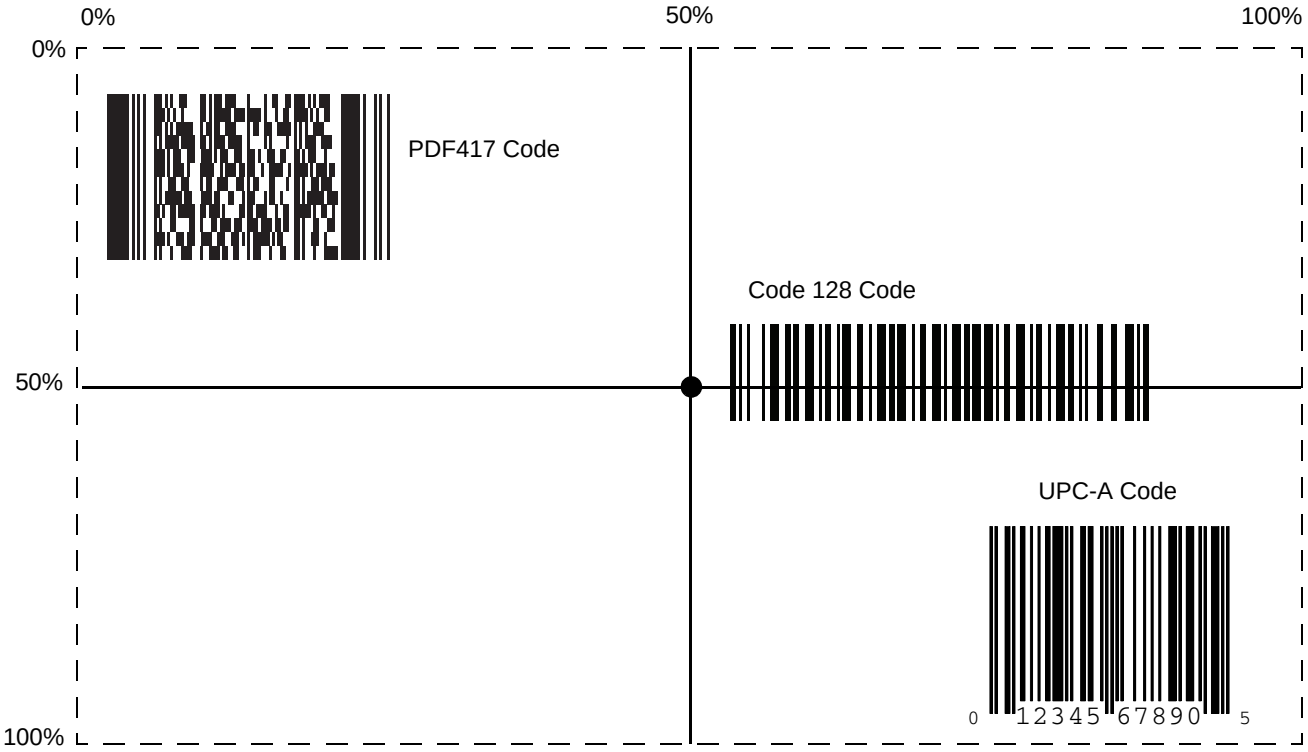


Figure 4-2 *Multicode Expression Example 1*

Example 2a

To decode a Code128 (Code Type=8) on the top half of the image and a PDF417 (Code Type=15) on the bottom half of the image, as in *Figure 4-4*, program the expression as follows:

The expression in decimal is (formatted for readability):

2 C 2 0 8 R 4 0 0 100 50 ; C 2 0 15 R 4 0 50 100 100 ;

To program the expression via scanning parameters the sequence is:

[MultiCode-Expression] 02 C 02 00 08 R 04 00 00 64 32 ; C 02 00 0F R 04 00 32 64 64 ; [End Of Message]

To program the expression via host command (SSI/SNAPI) the sequence is:

0x02 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x08 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x00 0x64 0x32 0x3B 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x0F 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x32 0x64 0x64 0x3B

Example 2b

In *Figure 4-4*, if the bottom PDF417 bar code must transmit first, reverse the sequence of the two bar codes:

The expression in decimal is (formatted for readability):

2 C 2 0 15 R 4 0 50 100 100 ; C 2 0 8 R 4 0 0 100 50 ;

To program the expression via scanning parameters the sequence is:

[MultiCode-Expression] 02 C 02 00 0F R 04 00 32 64 64 ; C 02 00 08 R 04 00 00 64 32 ; [End Of Message]

To program the expression via host command (SSI/SNAPI) the sequence is:

0x02 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x0F 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x32 0x64 0x64 0x3B 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x08 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x00 0x64 0x32 0x3B

Figure 4-3 *Multicode Expression Example 2*

Example 3

To decode the set of three bar codes while excluding the center Code 128 bar code, as in *Figure 4-4*, the expression is:

The expression in decimal is (formatted for readability):

3 C 2 0 15 R 4 0 0 50 50 ; C 2 [F0 24] R 4 70 0 100 40 ; C 2 0 8 R 4 65 60 100 100 ;

To program the expression via scanning parameters the sequence is:

[MultiCode-Expression] 03 C 02 00 0F R 04 00 00 32 32 ; C 02 F0 24 R 04 46 00 64 28 ;
C 02 00 08 R 04 41 3C 64 64 ; [End Of Message]

To program the expression via host command (SSI/SNAPI) the sequence is:

0x03 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x0F 0x52 0x04 0x00 0x00 0x32 0x32 0x3B 0x43 0x02 0xF0 0x24 0x52 0x04 0x46 0x00 0x64 0x28 0x3B 0x43 0x02 0x00 0x08 0x52 0x04 0x41 0x3C 0x64 0x64 0x3B

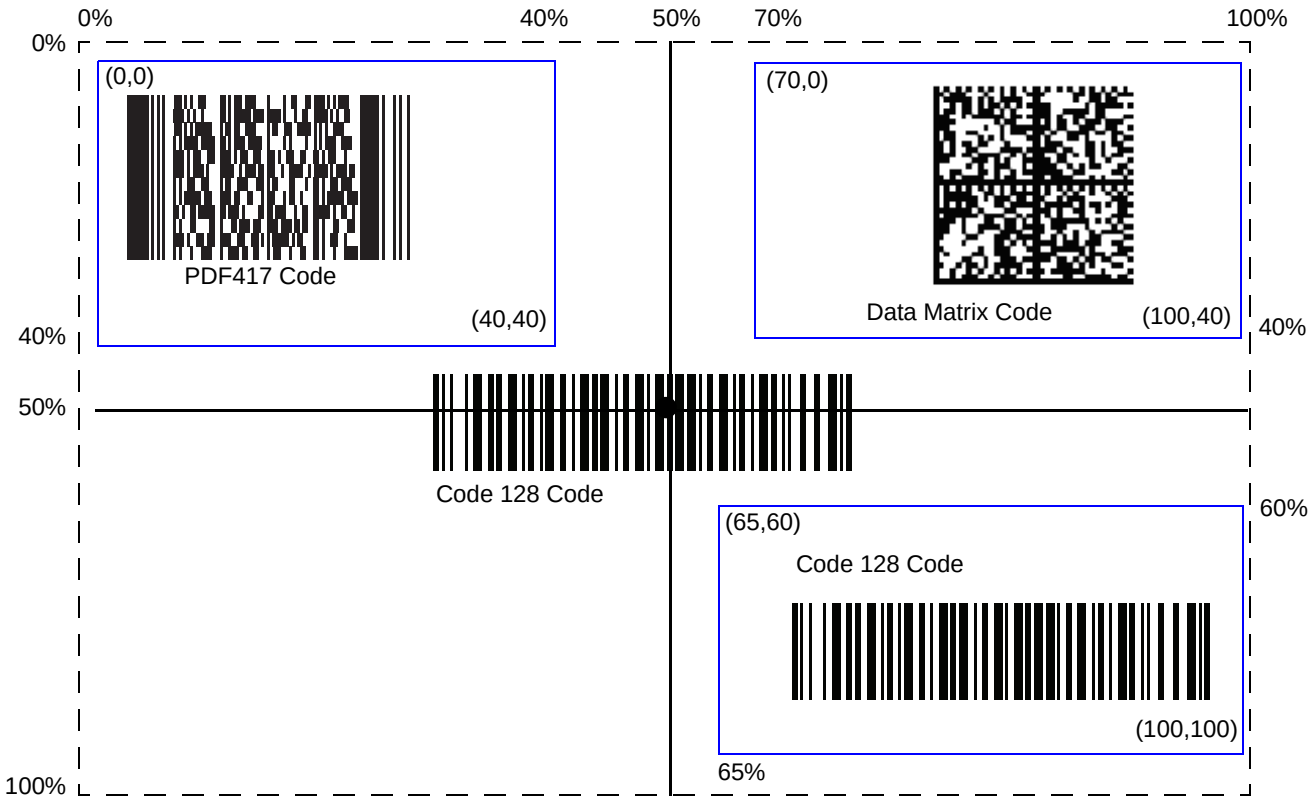


Figure 4-4 *Multicode Expression Example 3*

Multicode Mode Concatenation (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD)

Parameter # F1h, CDh

Enable this parameter to transmit multiple decoded bar codes, as specified by the *Multicode Expression (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD)*, as one bar code. Use the *Multicode Concatenation Symbology (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD)* parameter to specify how the concatenated bar codes transmit.

Disable this to transmit decoded bar codes separately.

NOTE When using Multicode Mode Concatenation, disable *Transmit Code ID Character on page 4-48* and check digits.

NOTE The DS3508-DP and DS3508-ER configurations do not support this feature.

Enable Multicode Mode Concatenation (01h)

***Disable Multicode Mode Concatenation (00h)**

Multicode Concatenation Symbology (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD)

Parameter # F1h, D2h

Use this parameter to specify how to transmit the concatenated bar codes decoded as specified by the *Multicode Expression (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD)*. *Multicode Mode Concatenation (DS3508-SR / DS3508-HD)* must be enabled to use this option.

✓ ***NOTE*** The DS3508-DP and DS3508-ER configurations do not support this feature.

Concatenation as Code 128 (01h)

***Concatenation as PDF417 (02h)**

Concatenation as Data Matrix (03h)

Concatenation as Maxicode (04h)

Multicode Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting Multicode Expression Programming

Use the following suggestions if encountering problems programming a multicode expression:

- Ensure the expression is valid. Invalid expressions are rejected during programming. When an expression is rejected the previous expression remains intact. If after programming the expression the digital scanner can still decode any bar code, the expression was possibly rejected.
- When programming the multicode expression via parameter bar code, the digital scanner generates beeps. If any of the following beeps do not sound during programming, an error occurred (see *Table 2-1 on page 2-2* and *Table 2-2 on page 2-4* for error indicators):
  - Scanning the **Multicode Expression** bar code produces a two-tone (same pitch) beep.
  - Scanning each value of the expression produces a two-tone (same pitch) beep.
  - Scanning the **End Of Message** bar code produces a four-tone (high-low-high-low) beep.
- Check the expression for syntax errors.
- Try programming a simple expression to ensure the syntax is correct. See *Examples of Simple Multicode Expressions*.
- Review *Notes on page 4-40* for additional hints.

Troubleshooting Multicode Mode Scanning and Decoding

Use the following suggestions if encountering problems using multicode mode:

- If the digital scanner appears to decode any single bar code instead of the intended multiple bar codes, ensure you enabled *Smart LED Mode (DS3508-ER Only) on page 4-36*. Programming the multicode expression does not enable multicode mode.
- When specifying **Region**, ensure:
  - Coordinates are within range the 0-100 decimal (or 0x00 - 0x64 hexadecimal).
  - Top, Left is above Bottom, Right. Top, Left is 0,0 (0x00, 0x00 hexadecimal), and Bottom, Right is 100,100 (0x64, 0x64 hexadecimal).
  - Regions for two or more bar codes do not overlap.
- When specifying **Code Type** ensure the digital scanner supports the code type. Try decoding a single bar code without using multicode. If it does not decode try enabling the bar code type. See *Chapter 11, Symbologies*.
- Experiment with simpler expressions, then add to it until you discover the source of the error. For example try the simplest expression (see *Examples of Simple Multicode Expressions*) and make sure you can scan a single bar code. If so, extend the expression by adding a second bar code, specifying a region, or specifying the code type. Verify that the digital scanner can decode this new expression. Continue adding to the expression until it fails to decode as expected, indicating the source of the error.
- Review *Notes on page 4-40* for additional hints.

Examples of Simple Multicode Expressions

The simplest multicode expression is:

- One bar code of any type, anywhere in the image.
- To program this use: **[MultiCode-Expression] 01 ; [End Of Message]**

Another simple multicode expression is:

- One Code 128 bar code, anywhere in the image.
- To program this use: **[MultiCode-Expression] 01 C 02 00 08 ; [End Of Message]**

Miscellaneous Scanner Parameters

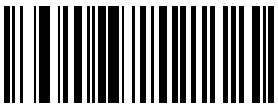
Transmit Code ID Character

Parameter # 2Dh

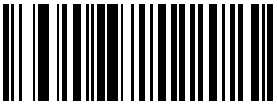
A Code ID character identifies the code type of a scanned bar code. This is useful when decoding more than one code type. In addition to any single character prefix already selected, the Code ID character is inserted between the prefix and the decoded symbol.

Select no Code ID character, a Symbol Code ID character, or an AIM Code ID character. For Code ID Characters, see *Symbol Code Identifiers on page B-1* and *AIM Code Identifiers on page B-3*.

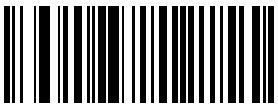
NOTE If you enable Symbol Code ID Character or AIM Code ID Character, and enable *Transmit "No Read" Message on page 4-52*, the digital scanner appends the code ID for Code 39 to the NR message.



Symbol Code ID Character (02h)



AIM Code ID Character (01h)



***None (00h)**

Prefix/Suffix Values

Key Category Parameter # P = 63h, S1 = 62h, S2 = 64h

Decimal Value Parameter # P = 69h, S1 = 68h, S2 = 6Ah

You can append a prefix and/or one or two suffixes to scan data for use in data editing. To set a value for a prefix or suffix, scan a four-digit number (i.e., four bar codes from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*) that corresponds to that value. See *Table E-1 on page E-1* for the four-digit codes.

When using host commands to set the prefix or suffix, set the key category parameter to 1, then set the 3-digit decimal value. See *Table E-1 on page E-1* for the four-digit codes.

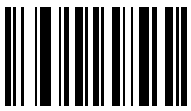
To correct an error or change a selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.

NOTE To use Prefix/Suffix values, first set the *Scan Data Transmission Format on page 4-50*.

Scan Prefix
(07h)

Scan Suffix 1
(06h)

Scan Suffix 2
(08h)



Data Format Cancel

Scan Data Transmission Format

Parameter # EBh

To change the scan data format, scan one of the following eight bar codes corresponding to the desired format.

NOTE If using this parameter do not use ADF rules to set the prefix/suffix.

To set values for the prefix and/or suffix, see *Prefix/Suffix Values on page 4-49*.

***Data As Is**
(00h)

<DATA> <SUFFIX 1>
(01h)

<DATA> <SUFFIX 2>
(02h)

<DATA> <SUFFIX 1> <SUFFIX 2>
(03h)

<PREFIX> <DATA >
(04h)

Scan Data Transmission Format (continued)

<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 1>
(05h)

<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 2>
(06h)

<PREFIX> <DATA> <SUFFIX 1> <SUFFIX 2>
(07h)

FN1 Substitution Values

Key Category Parameter # 67h

Decimal Value Parameter # 6Dh

The Wedge and USB HID Keyboard hosts support a FN1 Substitution feature. Enabling this substitutes any FN1 character (0x1b) in an EAN128 bar code with a value. This value defaults to 7013 (Enter Key).

When using host commands to set the FN1 substitution value, set the key category parameter to 1, then set the 3-digit keystroke value. See the ASCII Character Set table for the current host interface for the desired value.

To select a FN1 substitution value via bar code menus:

1. Scan the bar code below.

Set FN1 Substitution Value

2. Locate the keystroke desired for FN1 Substitution in the ASCII Character Set table for the current host interface. Enter the 4-digit ASCII Value by scanning each digit in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*.

To correct an error or change the selection, scan **Cancel**.

To enable FN1 substitution for USB HID keyboard, scan the **Enable FN1 Substitution** bar code on page *4-51*.

Transmit “No Read” Message

Parameter # 5Eh

Scan a bar code below to select whether or not to transmit a No Read message. Enable this to transmit the characters NR when a successful decode does not occur before trigger release or the **Decode Session Timeout** expires. See *Decode Session Timeout on page 4-28*. Disable this to send nothing to the host if a symbol does not decode.

NOTE If you enable **Transmit No Read**, and also enable Symbol Code ID Character or AIM Code ID Character for *Transmit Code ID Character on page 4-48*, the digital scanner appends the code ID for Code 39 to the NR message.

Enable No Read
(01h)

***Disable No Read**
(00h)

UID Parsing

NOTE UID parsing is only supported by DP configurations of the digital scanner.

NOTE UID constructs are compliant with the US Department of Defense MIL - STD - 130N.

A UID, or Unique Identifier, is used to identify and track data (e.g., manufacturer, distribution, lifetime of products and other information) specified by the United States Department of Defense for all imported packages containing merchandise equal to or greater than $5,000.00. Vendors are required to provide a legible and permanent UID marking, in the form of a data matrix bar code, with the contents.

DP configurations of the digital scanner read the data matrix bar code, verify it is a valid UID bar code and parse the data into a UID bar code (**Criterion: Parsed UID** bar code type with UID fields). This output can be used at a later date.

To enable/disable UID parsing, scan the appropriate bar code below. UID parsing is disabled by default. Scan **Enable Embedded UID Parsing** to start the parsing process.

*** Disable UID Parsing**

Enable Embedded UID Parsing

UID Parsing Output

When a UID successfully parses the fields shown in *Table 4-2* are created. Each field is separated by a comma. If data is missing from a field in the UID, a lone comma fills the field.

NOTE When a UID successfully parses, a parsed UID bar code type transmits to the host.
When parsing is unsuccessful but data transmits to the host anyway, the data is in the data matrix format.

Table 4-2 *Output Fields*

Field	Description
1	Concatenated UID
2	Construct type (UID1 or UID2)
3	Enterprise ID
4	Serialized part #
5	Original part #
6	Lot #
7	Current part #
8	Scanned data in ASCII mode

Example Output - Successful Parsed Data

D12345WS51-004041,UID2,12345,041,WS51-004,,,[)> rs 06 gs 17V12345 gs 1PWS51-004 gs S041 rs eot

Table 4-3 *Output Fields*

Field	Description
1	D12345WS51-004041
2	UID2
3	12345
4	041
5	WS51-004
6	(no data supplied, comma filled field)
7	(no data supplied, comma filled field)
8	[)> rs 06 gs 17V12345 gs 1PWS51-004 gs S041 rs eot

UID Error Mode Options

- **UID Error Beep** (default): Scan **UID Error Beep** to program the digital scanner not to parse the data contained in the UID when the UID is not formatted correctly. An error tone sounds and no data transmits to the host.
- **UID Error Pass Data**: Scan **UID Error Pass Data** to program the digital scanner to transmit data to the host even when parsing fails. The digital scanner reads the incorrectly encoded UID, assumes the host can process the data and transmits the unformatted contents of the bar code. No error tone sounds.
- **UID Error Beep and Pass Data**: Scan **UID Error Pass Data** to program the digital scanner to transmit data to the host even when parsing fails. The digital scanner reads the incorrectly encoded UID, assumes the host can process the data and transmits the unformatted contents of the bar code. An error tone sounds.

Scan the appropriate bar code below to program potential error conditions.

UID Error Beep

UID Error Pass Data

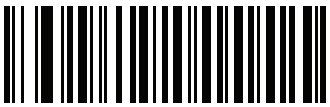
UID Error Beep and Pass Data

Sample ADF Rule for UID

To transmit only the concatenated UID field of the parsed UID, scan the bar codes below, in order.

Begin New Rule

Criterion: Parsed UID



Send Data Up to Character

,
(Comma)

Save Rule

UID Sample Bar Codes

05 Format

WS51-004041,UID2,,041,WS51-004,,,[)> rs 05 gs 01WS51-004 gs 21041 rs eot

Table 4-4 *Sample 05 Formatted Data*

Field	Description
1 - Concatenated UID	WS51-004041
2 - Construct type (UID1 or UID2)	UID2
3 - Enterprise ID	, (no data supplied)
4 - Serialized part #	041
5 - Original part #	WS51-004
6 - Lot #	, (no data supplied)
7 - Current part #	, (no data supplied)
8 - Scanned data in ASCII mode	[)> rs 05 gs 01WS51-004 gs 21041 rs eot

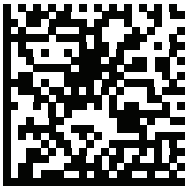
06 Format

D12345WS51-004041,UID2,12345,041,WS51-004,,,[)> rs 06 gs 17V12345 gs 1PWS51-004 gs S041 rs eot

Table 4-5 *Sample 06 Formatted Data*

Field	Description
1 - Concatenated UID	D12345WS51-004041
2 - Construct type (UID1 or UID2)	UID2
3 - Enterprise ID	12345
4 - Serialized part #	041
5 - Original part #	WS51-004
6 - Lot #	, (no data supplied)
7 - Current part #	, (no data supplied)
8 - Scanned data in ASCII mode	[)> rs 06 gs 17V12345 gs 1PWS51-004 gs S041 rs eot

12 Format

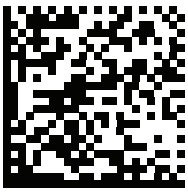


D12345WS51-004041,UID2,12345,041,WS51-004,,,[]> rs 12 gs MFR 12345 gs PNO WS51-004 gs SEQ 041 rs eot

Table 4-6 *Sample 12 Formatted Data*

Field	Description
1 - Concatenated UID	D12345WS51-004041
2 - Construct type (UID1 or UID2)	UID2
3 - Enterprise ID	12345
4 - Serialized part #	041
5 - Original part #	WS51-004
6 - Lot #	, (no data supplied)
7 - Current part #	, (no data supplied)
8 - Scanned data in ASCII mode	[]> rs 12 gs MFR 12345 gs PNO WS51-004 gs SEQ 041 rs eot

DD Format



D12345WS51-004041,UID2,12345,041,WS51-004,,,[]> rs DD gs MFR 12345 gs PNO WS51-004 gs SEQ 041 rs eot

Table 4-7 *Sample DD Formatted Data*

Field	Description
1 - Concatenated UID	D12345WS51-004041
2 - Construct type (UID1 or UID2)	UID2
3 - Enterprise ID	12345
4 - Serialized part #	041
5 - Original part #	WS51-004
6 - Lot #	, (no data supplied)
7 - Current part #	, (no data supplied)
8 - Scanned data in ASCII mode	[]> rs DD gs MFR 12345 gs PNO WS51-004 gs SEQ 041 rs eot

Chapter 5 Imaging Preferences

Introduction

NOTE The DS3508-ER configuration does not support imaging preferences parameters.

You can program the digital scanner to perform various functions, or activate different features. This chapter describes imaging preference features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features.

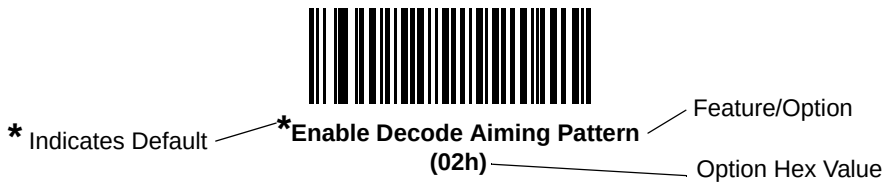
The digital scanner ships with the settings in *Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults on page 5-2* (also see *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all host device and miscellaneous defaults). If the default values suit requirements, programming is not necessary.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when you power down the digital scanner.

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

If not using a USB cable, select a host type after the power-up beeps sound. See *Chapter 6, USB Interface* and *Chapter 7, RS-232 Interface* for specific host information. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connecting to a new host.

To return all features to default values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-5*. Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to disable image capture illumination, scan the **Disable Image Capture Illumination** bar code under *Image Capture Illumination on page 5-5*. The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters require scanning several bar codes. See these parameter descriptions for this procedure.

Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults

Table 5-1 lists the defaults for imaging preferences parameters. To change the default values, scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-5*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 5-1 *Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Imaging Preferences			
Operational Modes	N/A	N/A	*5-4*
Image Capture Illumination	F0h 69h	Enable	*5-5*
Gain / Exposure Priority for Snapshot Mode	F1h 32h	Autodetect	*5-6*
Snapshot Mode Timeout	F0h 43h	0 (30 seconds)	*5-7*
Snapshot Aiming Pattern	F0h 2Ch	Enable	*5-7*
Image Cropping	F0h 2Dh	Disable	*5-8*
Crop to Pixel Addresses	F4h F0h 3Bh; F4h F0h 3Ch; F4h F0h 3Dh; F4h F0h 3Eh	0 top 0 left 479 bottom 751 right	*5-9*
Image Size (Number of Pixels)	F0h 2Eh	Full	*5-10*
Image Brightness (Target White)	F0h 86h	180	*5-11*
JPEG Image Options	F0h 2Bh	Quality	*5-11*
JPEG Target File Size	F1h 31h	160 kB	*5-12*

Table 5-1 *Imaging Preferences Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
JPEG Quality and Size Value	F0h 31h	65	5-12
Image Enhancement	F1h 34h	Off (0)	5-13
Image File Format Selection	F0h 30h	JPEG	5-14
Bits per Pixel (BPP)	F0h 2Fh	8 BPP	5-15
Signature Capture	5Dh	Disable	5-16
Signature Capture Image File Format Selection	F0h 39h	JPEG	5-17
Signature Capture Bits per Pixel (BPP)	F0h 3Ah	8 BPP	5-18
Signature Capture Width	F4h F0h 6Eh	400	5-19
Signature Capture Height	F4h F0h 6Fh	100	5-19
Signature Capture JPEG Quality	F0h A5h	65	5-19
Video View Finder	F0h 44h	Disable	5-20
Video View Finder Image Size	F0h 49h	1700 bytes	5-20

Imaging Preferences

The parameters in this chapter control image capture characteristics. Image capture occurs in all modes of operation, including decode and snapshot.

Operational Modes

The digital scanner has two modes of operation:

- Decode Mode
- Snapshot Mode.

Decode Mode

By default, when you pull the trigger the digital scanner attempts to locate and decode enabled bar codes within its field of view. The digital scanner remains in this mode until it decodes a bar code or you release the trigger.

Snapshot Mode

Use Snapshot Mode to capture a high-quality image and transmit it to the host. To temporarily enter this mode scan the **Snapshot Mode** bar code. While in this mode the digital scanner blinks the green LED at 1-second intervals to indicate it is not in standard operating (decode) mode.

In Snapshot Mode, the digital scanner turns on its laser aiming pattern to highlight the area to capture in the image. The next trigger pull instructs the digital scanner to capture a high quality image and transmit it to the host. A short time may pass (less than 2 seconds) between when the trigger is pulled and the image is captured as the digital scanner adjusts to the lighting conditions. Hold the digital scanner steady until the image is captured, denoted by a single beep.

If you do not press the trigger within the Snapshot Mode Timeout period, the digital scanner returns to Decode Mode. Use *Snapshot Mode Timeout on page 5-7* to adjust this timeout period. The default timeout period is 30 seconds.

To disable the laser aiming pattern during Snapshot Mode, see *Snapshot Aiming Pattern on page 5-7*.

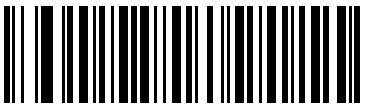
Snapshot Mode

Image Capture Illumination

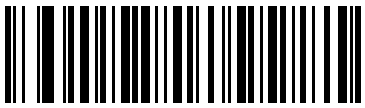
Parameter # F0h 69h

Selecting **Enable Image Capture Illumination** causes illumination to turn on during every image capture. Disable illumination to prevent the digital scanner from using illumination.

Enabling illumination usually results in superior images. The effectiveness of illumination decreases as the distance to the target increases.



***Enable Image Capture Illumination (01h)**



Disable Image Capture Illumination (00h)

Gain/Exposure Priority for Snapshot Mode

Parameter # F1h, 32h

This parameter alters the digital scanner's gain exposure priority when it acquires an image in Snapshot Mode in auto exposure mode.

- Scan **Low Exposure Priority** to set a mode in which the digital scanner favors higher gain over exposure to capture an image. This results in an image that is less susceptible to motion blur at the expense of noise artifacts. However, for most applications, the amount of noise is acceptable.
- Scan **Low Gain Priority** to set a mode in which the digital scanner favors longer exposure time rather than higher gain to capture an image. This ensures that the image is less noisy and produces fewer artifacts during post processing activities like image enhancement (sharpening). The mode is recommended for fixed mount / fixed object image capture since the image acquired is susceptible to motion blur.
- Scan **Autodetect** (default) to set a mode in which the digital scanner automatically selects Gain Priority or Low Exposure Priority mode for Snapshot Mode. If the digital scanner is in a magnetic read switch enabled stand (or it is configured in Blink Mode), it uses Low Gain Priority mode. Otherwise, it uses the Low Exposure Priority mode.

Low Gain Priority
(0)

Low Exposure Priority
(1)

*** Autodetect**
(2)

Snapshot Mode Timeout

Parameter # F0h, 43h

This parameter sets the amount of time the digital scanner remains in Snapshot Mode. The digital scanner exits Snapshot Mode when you pull the trigger, or when the Snapshot Mode Timeout elapses. To set this timeout value, scan the bar code below followed by a bar code from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. The default value is 0 which represents 30 seconds; values increment by 30. For example, 1 = 60 seconds, 2 = 90 seconds, etc.

Snapshot Mode Timeout

Snapshot Aiming Pattern

Parameter # F0h, 2Ch

Select **Enable Snapshot Aiming Pattern** to project the aiming pattern when in Snapshot Mode, or **Disable Snapshot Aiming Pattern** to turn the aiming pattern off.

***Enable Snapshot Aiming Pattern**
(01h)

Disable Snapshot Aiming Pattern
(00h)

Image Cropping

Parameter # F0h, 2Dh

This parameter crops a captured image. Select **Disable Image Cropping** to present the full 752 x 480 pixels. Select **Enable Image Cropping** to crop the image to the pixel addresses set in *Crop to Pixel Addresses on page 5-9*.

Enable Image Cropping
(01h)

***Disable Image Cropping**
(Use Full 752 x 480 Pixels)
(00h)

Crop to Pixel Addresses

Parameter # F4h, F0h, 3Bh (Top)
Parameter # F4h, F0h, 3Ch (Left)
Parameter # F4h, F0h, 3Dh (Bottom)
Parameter # F4h, F0h, 3Eh (Right)

If you selected **Enable Image Cropping**, set the pixel addresses from (0,0) to (751,479) to crop to.

Columns are numbered from 0 to 751, rows from 0 to 479. Specify four values for Top, Left, Bottom, and Right, where Top and Bottom correspond to row pixel addresses, and Left and Right correspond to column pixel addresses. For example, for a 4 row x 8 column image in the extreme bottom-right section of the image set the following values:

Top = 476, Bottom = 479, Left = 744, Right = 751

To set the crop to pixel address, scan each pixel address bar code below followed by three numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to crop the top pixel address to 3, scan 0, 0, 3. See *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* for numeric bar codes.

NOTE The digital scanner has a cropping resolution of 4 pixels. Setting the cropping area to less than 4 pixels (after resolution adjustment, see *Image Size (Number of Pixels) on page 5-10*) transfers the entire image.

Top Pixel Address
(0 - 479 Decimal)

Left Pixel Address
(0 - 751 Decimal)

Bottom Pixel Address
(0 - 479 Decimal)

Right Pixel Address
(0 - 751 Decimal)

Image Size (Number of Pixels)

Parameter # F0h, 2Eh

This option alters image resolution before compression. Multiple pixels are combined to one pixel, resulting in a smaller image containing the original content with reduced resolution.

Select one of the following values:

Resolution Value	Uncropped Image Size
Full	752 x 480
1/2	376 x 240
1/4	180 x 120

***Full Resolution**
(00h)

1/2 Resolution
(01h)

1/4 Resolution
(03h)

Image Brightness (Target White)

Parameter # F0h 86h

Type: Byte

Range: 1 - 240

This parameter sets the Target White value used in Snapshot and Video Viewfinder mode when using auto exposure. White and black are defined as 240 decimal and 1, respectively. Setting the value to the factory default of 180 sets the white level of the image to ~180.

To set the Image Brightness parameter, scan **Image Brightness** below followed by three numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to set an Image Brightness value of 99, scan 0, 9, 9. See *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* for numeric bar codes.

***180**

Image Brightness (3 digits)

JPEG Image Options

Parameter # F0h, 2Bh

Select an option to optimize JPEG images for either size or for quality. Scan the **JPEG Quality Selector** bar code to enter a quality value; the digital scanner then selects the corresponding image size. Scan the **JPEG Size Selector** bar code to enter a size value; the digital scanner then selects the best image quality.

***JPEG Quality Selector (01h)**

JPEG Size Selector (00h)

JPEG Target File Size

Parameter # F4h, F1h, 31h

Type: Word

Range: 5-350

This parameter defines the target JPEG file size in terms 1 Kilobytes (1024 bytes). The default value is 160 kB which represents 160 Kilobytes.

CAUTION JPEG compress may take 10 to 15 seconds based on the amount of information in the target image. Scanning **JPEG Quality Selector** (default setting) on *page 5-11* produces a compressed image that is consistent in quality and compression time.

To set the JPEG Target File Size parameter, scan **JPEG Target File Size** below followed by three numeric bar codes representing the value. Leading zeros are required. For example, to set an Image Brightness value of 99, scan 0, 9, 9 in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*.

JPEG Target File Size
(3 digits)

JPEG Quality and Size Value

JPEG Quality = Parameter # F0h, 31h

If you selected **JPEG Quality Selector**, scan the **JPEG Quality Value** bar code followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value from 5 to 100, where 100 represents the highest quality image.

JPEG Quality Value
(Default: 065)
(5 - 100 Decimal)

Image Enhancement

Parameter # F1h, 34h

This parameter configures the digital scanner's Image Enhance feature. This feature uses a combination of edge sharpening and contrast enhancement to produce an image that is visually pleasing.

The levels of image enhancement are:

- Off (0) - Default
- Low (1)
- Med (2)
- High (3).

***Off**
(0)

Low
(1)

Medium
(2)

High
(3)

Image File Format Selector

Parameter # F0h, 30h

Select an image format appropriate for the system (BMP, TIFF, or JPEG). The digital scanner stores captured images in the selected format.

BMP File Format (03h)

***JPEG File Format (01h)**

TIFF File Format (04h)

Bits Per Pixel

Parameter # F0h, 2Fh

Select the number of significant bits per pixel (BPP) to use when capturing an image. Select **1 BPP** for a black and white image, **4 BPP** to assign 1 of 16 levels of grey to each pixel, or **8 BPP** to assign 1 of 256 levels of grey to each pixel.

NOTE The digital scanner ignores these settings for JPEG file formats, which only support **8 BPP**.

The digital scanner ignores 1 BPP for TIFF file formats, which only support **4 BPP** and **8 BPP**. 1 BPP is coerced to 4 BPP for TIFF file formats.

1 BPP
(00h)

4 BPP
(01h)

***8 BPP**
(02h)

Signature Capture

Parameter # 5Dh

A signature capture bar code is a special-purpose symbology which delineates a signature capture area in a document with a machine-readable format. The recognition pattern is variable so it can optionally provide an index to various signatures. The region inside the bar code pattern is considered the signature capture area. See *Appendix F, Signature Capture Code* for more information.

Output File Format

Decoding a signature capture bar code de-skews the signature image and converts the image to a BMP, JPEG, or TIFF file format. The output data includes the file descriptor followed by the formatted signature image.

File Descriptor			Signature Image
Output Format (1 byte)	Signature Type (1 byte)	Signature Image Size (4 bytes) (BIG Endian)	
JPEG - 1 BMP - 3 TIFF - 4	1-8	0x00000400	0x00010203….

To enable or disable Signature Capture, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Signature Capture (01h)

***Disable Signature Capture (00h)**

Signature Capture File Format Selector

Parameter # F0h, 39h

Select a signature file format appropriate for the system (BMP, TIFF, or JPEG). The digital scanner stores captured signatures in the selected format.

BMP Signature Format
(03h)

***JPEG Signature Format**
(01h)

TIFF Signature Format
(04h)

Signature Capture Bits Per Pixel

Parameter # F0h, 3Ah

Select the number of significant bits per pixel (BPP) to use when capturing a signature. Select **1 BPP** for a black and white image, **4 BPP** to assign 1 of 16 levels of grey to each pixel, or **8 BPP** to assign 1 of 256 levels of grey to each pixel.

NOTE The digital scanner ignores these settings for JPEG file formats, which only support **8 BPP**.

1 BPP
(00h)

4 BPP
(01h)

***8 BPP**
(02h)

Signature Capture Width

Parameter # F4h, F0h, 6Eh

The aspect ratio of the Signature Capture Width and Signature Capture Height parameters must match that of the signature capture area. For example, a 4 x 1 inch signature capture area would require a 4 to 1 aspect ratio of width to height.

To set the width of the signature capture box, scan the **Signature Capture Width** bar code, followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value in the range of 001 to 752 decimal.

Signature Capture Width
(Default: 400)
(001 - 752 Decimal)

Signature Capture Height

Parameter # F4h, F0h, 6Fh

To set the height of the signature capture box, scan the **Signature Capture Height** bar code, followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value in the range of 001 to 480 decimal.

Signature Capture Height (Default: 100)
(001 - 480 Decimal)

Signature Capture JPEG Quality

Parameter # F0h, A5h

Scan the **JPEG Quality Value** bar code followed by 3 bar codes from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to a value from 005 to 100, where 100 represents the highest quality image.

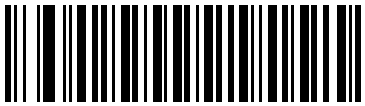
JPEG Quality Value (Default: 065)
(5 - 100 Decimal)

Video View Finder

Parameter # F0h, 44h

Select **Enable Video View Finder** to project the video view finder, or **Disable Video View Finder** to turn the video view finder off.

***Disable Video View Finder**
(00h)



Enable Video View Finder
(01h)

Video View Finder Image Size

Parameter # F0h, 49h

Select the number of 100-byte blocks. Values range from 800 to 3000 bytes. Selecting a smaller value transmits more frames per second; selecting a larger value increases video quality.

To set the Video View Finder Image Size, scan the bar code below followed by two bar codes from *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* corresponding to the 100-byte value from 800 to 3000 bytes. For example, to select 1500 bytes, enter 1, 5. To select 900 bytes, enter 0, 9.

Video View Finder Image Size

Chapter 6 USB Interface

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner with a USB host. The digital scanner connects directly to a USB host, or a powered USB hub, which powers it. No additional power supply is required.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.

*Indicates Default — ***North American Standard USB Keyboard** — Feature/Option

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Connecting a USB Interface

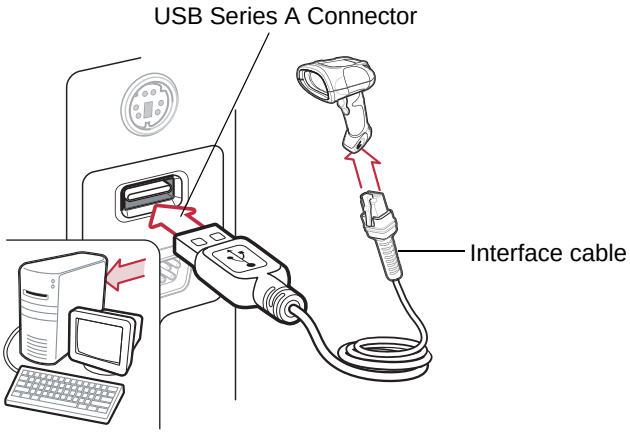


Figure 6-1 *USB Connection*

The digital scanner connects with USB-capable hosts including:

- Desktop PCs and notebooks
  - Apple™ iMac, G4, iBooks (North America only)
  - IBM SurePOS terminals
- Sun, IBM, and other network computers that support more than one keyboard.

The following operating systems support the digital scanner through USB:

- Windows® 98, 2000, ME, XP
- MacOS 8.5 - MacOS 10.3
- IBM 4690 OS.

The digital scanner also interfaces with other USB hosts which support USB Human Interface Devices (HID).

To set up the digital scanner:

NOTE Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 6-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Connect the modular connector of the USB interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner (see *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*).
2. Plug the series A connector in the USB host or hub, or plug the Plus Power connector in an available port of the IBM SurePOS terminal.
3. Select the USB device type by scanning the appropriate bar code from *USB Device Type on page 6-4*.
4. On first installation when using Windows, the software prompts to select or install the Human Interface Device driver. To install this driver, provided by Windows, click **Next** through all the choices and click **Finished** on the last choice. The digital scanner powers up during this installation.
5. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

If problems occur with the system, see *Troubleshooting on page 3-2*.

USB Parameter Defaults

Table 6-1 lists the defaults for USB host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the Parameter Descriptions section beginning on page *6-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 6-1 *USB Interface Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
USB Host Parameters		
USB Device Type	HID Keyboard Emulation	*6-4*
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking	Enable	*6-5*
USB Country Keyboard Types (Country Codes)	North American	*6-6*
USB Keystroke Delay	No Delay	*6-8*
USB CAPS Lock Override	Disable	*6-8*
USB Ignore Unknown Characters	Enable	*6-9*
Emulate Keypad	Disable	*6-9*
Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero	Disable	*6-10*
USB FN1 Substitution	Disable	*6-10*
Function Key Mapping	Disable	*6-11*
Simulated Caps Lock	Disable	*6-11*
Convert Case	None	*6-12*
USB Static CDC	Enable	*6-12*
USB Polling Interval	8 msec	*6-13*
Quick Keypad Emulation	Disable	*6-15*

USB Host Parameters

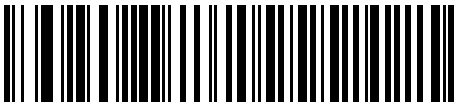
USB Device Type

Select the desired USB device type.

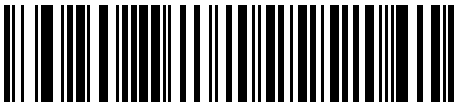
NOTE When changing USB Device Types, the digital scanner automatically resets and issues the standard startup beep sequences.

NOTE Before selecting **CDC COM Port Emulation**, install the CDC INF file on the host to ensure the scanner does not stall during power up (due to a failure to enumerate USB). If the scanner stalls, to recover it:

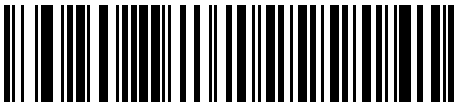
1) Install the CDC INF file
   or
2) After power-up, hold the trigger for 10 seconds, which allows the scanner to power up using an alternate USB configuration. Upon power-up, scan another **USB Device Type**.



***HID Keyboard Emulation**



IBM Table Top USB



IBM Hand-Held USB

USB OPOS Handheld

USB Device Type (continued)

Simple COM Port Emulation

CDC COM Port Emulation

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) with Imaging Interface

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) without Imaging Interface

Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking

After selecting a SNAPI interface as the USB device type, select whether to enable or disable status handshaking.

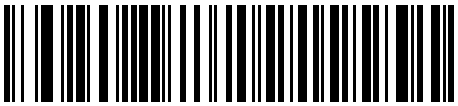
***Enable SNAPI Status Handshaking**

Disable SNAPI Status Handshaking

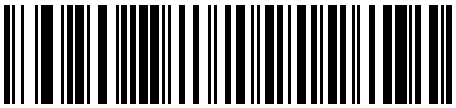
USB Country Keyboard Types - Country Codes

Scan the bar code corresponding to the keyboard type. This setting applies only to the USB HID Keyboard Emulation device.

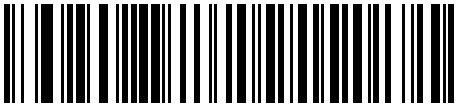
NOTE When changing USB country keyboard types the digital scanner automatically resets and issues the standard startup beep sequences.



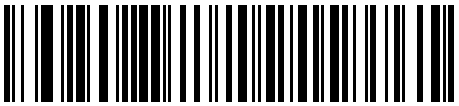
***North American Standard USB Keyboard**



German Windows



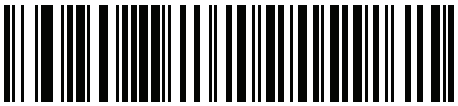
French Windows



French Canadian Windows 95/98

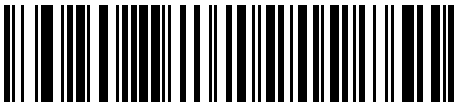
French Canadian Windows 2000/XP

USB Country Keyboard Types - Country Codes (continued)

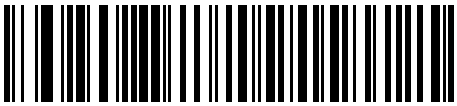


French Belgian Windows

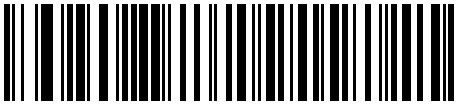
Spanish Windows



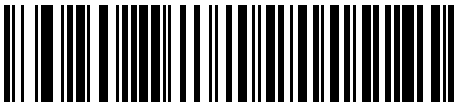
Italian Windows



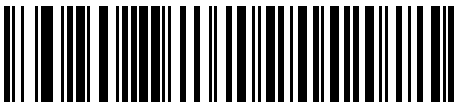
Swedish Windows



UK English Windows



Japanese Windows (ASCII)

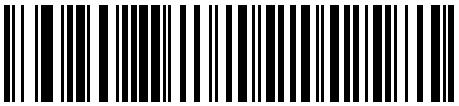


Portuguese-Brazilian Windows

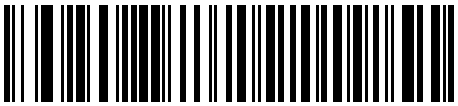
USB Keystroke Delay

This parameter sets the delay, in milliseconds, between emulated keystrokes. Scan a bar code below to increase the delay when hosts require a slower transmission of data.

***No Delay**



Medium Delay (20 msec)



Long Delay (40 msec)

USB CAPS Lock Override

This option applies only to the HID Keyboard Emulation device. Enable this to preserve the case of the data regardless of the state of the **Caps Lock** key. This setting is always enabled for the Japanese, Windows (ASCII) keyboard type and can not be disabled.

Override Caps Lock Key (Enable)

***Do Not Override Caps Lock Key (Disable)**

USB Ignore Unknown Characters

This option applies only to the HID Keyboard Emulation device and IBM device. Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Select **Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The digital scanner issues no error beeps.

Select **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters**, for IBM devices, to prevent sending bar codes containing at least one unknown character are to the host, or for HID Keyboard Emulation devices, this sends the bar code characters up to the unknown character. The digital scanner issues an error beep.

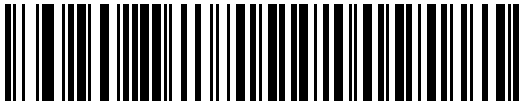
***Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters (Transmit)**

Do Not Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters (Disable)

Emulate Keypad

Enable this to send all characters as ASCII sequences over the numeric keypad. For example ASCII A transmits as “ALT make” 0 6 5 “ALT Break”.

***Disable Keypad Emulation**



Enable Keypad Emulation

Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero

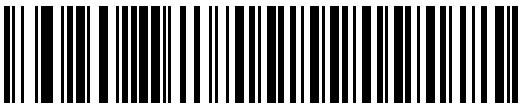
Enable this to send character sequences sent over the numeric keypad as ISO characters which have a leading zero. For example ASCII A transmits as “ALT MAKE” 0 0 6 5 “ALT BREAK”.

***Disable Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero**

Enable Keypad Emulation with Leading Zero

USB Keyboard FN 1 Substitution

This option applies only to the USB HID Keyboard Emulation device. Enable this to replace any FN 1 characters in an EAN 128 bar code with a user-selected Key Category and value (see *FN1 Substitution Values on page 4-51* to set the Key Category and Key Value).

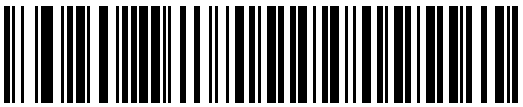


Enable

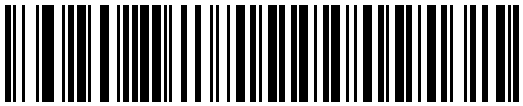
***Disable**

Function Key Mapping

ASCII values under 32 are normally sent as a control-key sequences (see *Table 6-2 on page 6-16*). Enable this parameter to send the keys in bold in place of the standard key mapping. Table entries that do not have a bold entry remain the same whether or not you enable this parameter.



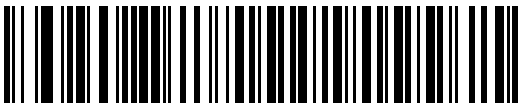
***Disable Function Key Mapping**



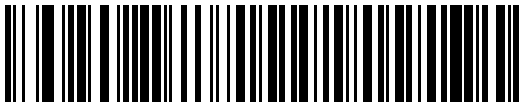
Enable Function Key Mapping

Simulated Caps Lock

Enable this to invert upper and lower case characters on the bar code as if the Caps Lock state is enabled on the keyboard. This inversion occurs regardless of the keyboard's **Caps Lock** state.



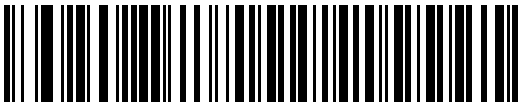
***Disable Simulated Caps Lock**



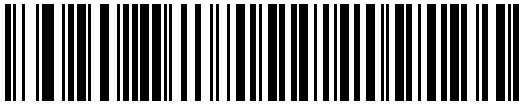
Enable Simulated Caps Lock

Convert Case

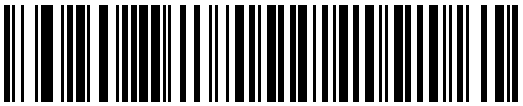
Enable this to convert all bar code data to the selected case.



***No Case Conversion**



Convert All to Upper Case



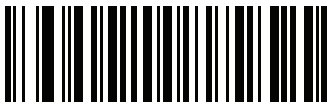
Convert All to Lower Case

USB Static CDC

When disabled, each device connected consumes another COM port (first device = COM1, second device = COM2, third device = COM3, etc.)

When enabled, each device connects to the same COM port.

***Enable USB Static CDC**

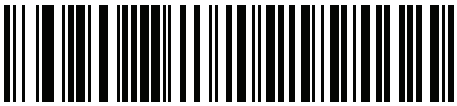


Disable USB Static CDC

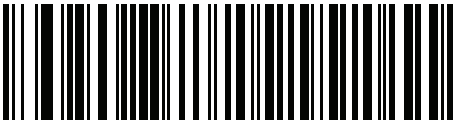
USB Polling Interval

This option applies only to the USB HID Keyboard Emulation Device. Scan a bar code below to set the polling interval. The polling interval determines the rate at which data can be sent between the scanner and the host computer. A lower number indicates a faster data rate.

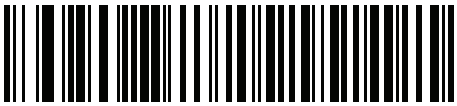
CAUTION Ensure your host machine can handle the selected data rate. Selecting a data rate that is too fast for your host machine may result in lost data.



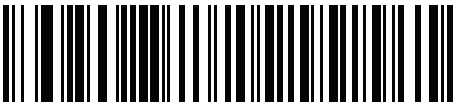
1 msec



2 msec

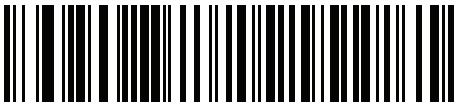


3msec

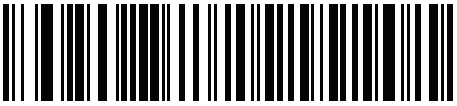


4 msec

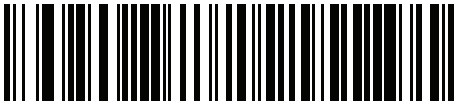
USB Polling Interval (continued)



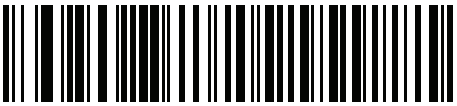
5 msec



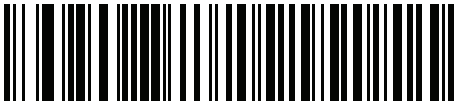
6 msec



7 msec



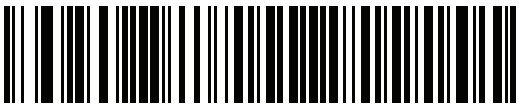
* 8 msec



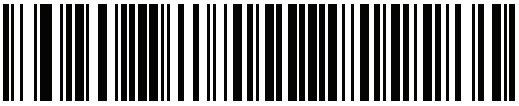
9 msec

Quick Keypad Emulation

This option applies only to the HID Keyboard Emulation Device and if Emulate Keypad is enabled. This parameter enables a quicker method of keypad emulation where ASCII sequences are only sent for ASCII characters not found on the keyboard. The default value is **Disable**.



Enable



*** Disable**

ASCII Character Set for USB

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1000	%U	CTRL 2
1001	$A	CTRL A
1002	$B	CTRL B
1003	$C	CTRL C
1004	$D	CTRL D
1005	$E	CTRL E
1006	$F	CTRL F
1007	$G	CTRL G
1008	$H	CTRL H/**BACKSPACE**[1]
1009	$I	CTRL I/**HORIZONTAL TAB**[1]
1010	$J	CTRL J
1011	$K	CTRL K
1012	$L	CTRL L
1013	$M	CTRL M/**ENTER**[1]
1014	$N	CTRL N
1015	$O	CTRL O
1016	$P	CTRL P
1017	$Q	CTRL Q
1018	$R	CTRL R
1019	$S	CTRL S
1020	$T	CTRL T
1021	$U	CTRL U
1022	$V	CTRL V
1023	$W	CTRL W
1024	$X	CTRL X

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1025	$Y	CTRL Y
1026	$Z	CTRL Z
1027	%A	CTRL [/**ESC**[1]
1028	%B	CTRL \
1029	%C	CTRL]
1030	%D	CTRL 6
1031	%E	CTRL -
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	“
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/O	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	`
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-2 *USB Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/ Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	|
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enable *Function Key Mapping on page 6-11*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 6-3 *USB ALT Key Character Set*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2064	ALT 2
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

Table 6-4 *USB GUI Key Character Set*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P

Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

Table 6-4 *USB GUI Key Character Set (Continued)*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3081	GUI Q
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z
Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.	

Table 6-5 *USB F Key Character Set*

F Keys	Keystroke
5001	F1
5002	F2
5003	F3
5004	F4
5005	F5
5006	F6
5007	F7
5008	F8
5009	F9
5010	F10
5011	F11
5012	F12
5013	F13
5014	F14
5015	F15
5016	F16
5017	F17
5018	F18
5019	F19
5020	F20
5021	F21
5022	F22
5023	F23
5024	F24

Table 6-6 *USB Numeric Keypad Character Set*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	undefined
6045	-
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

Table 6-7 *USB Extended Keypad Character Set*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	PgUp
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Down Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

Chapter 7 RS-232 Interface

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner with an RS-232 host. Use the RS-232 interface to connect the digital scanner to point-of-sale devices, host computers, or other devices with an available RS-232 port (e.g., com port).

If your host does not appear in *Table 7-2*, refer to the documentation for the host device to set communication parameters to match the host.

✓ ***NOTE*** The digital scanner uses TTL RS-232 signal levels, which interface with most system architectures. For system architectures requiring RS-232C signal levels, Motorola offers different cables providing TTL-to-RS-232C conversion. Contact Motorola Solutions Support for more information.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.

* Indicates Default — ***Baud Rate 57,600** — Feature/Option

✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Connecting an RS-232 Interface

Connect the digital scanner directly to the host computer.

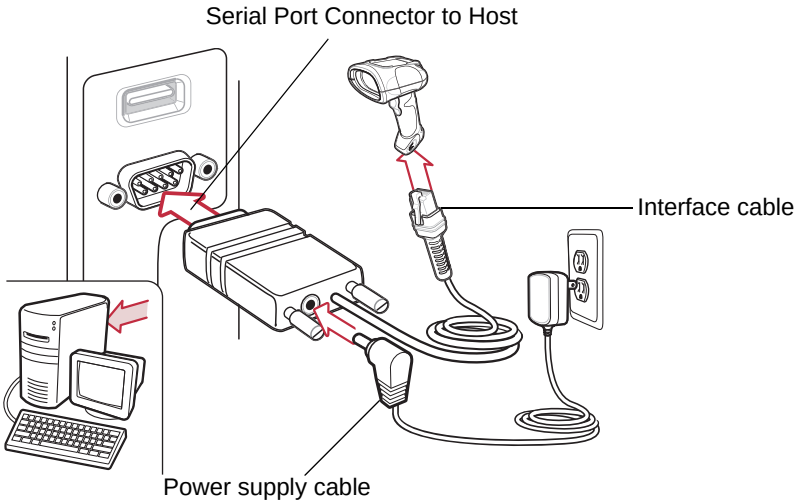


Figure 7-1 *RS-232 Direct Connection*

NOTE Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 7-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Attach the modular connector of the RS-232 interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner (see *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*).
2. Connect the other end of the RS-232 interface cable to the serial port on the host.
3. Connect the power supply to the serial connector end of the RS-232 interface cable. Plug the power supply into an appropriate outlet.
4. Select the RS-232 host type by scanning the appropriate bar code from *RS-232 Host Types on page 7-6*.
5. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

RS-232 Parameter Defaults

Table 7-1 lists the defaults for RS-232 host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the RS-232 Host Parameters section beginning on page *7-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 7-1 *RS-232 Host Default Table*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
RS-232 Host Parameters		
RS-232 Host Types	Standard	*7-6*
Baud Rate	9600	*7-8*
Parity Type	None	*7-9*
Data Bits	8-Bit	*7-9*
Stop Bits	1 Stop Bit	*7-10*
Check Receive Errors	Enable	*7-10*
Hardware Handshaking	None	*7-11*
Software Handshaking	None	*7-13*
Host Serial Response Time-out	2 Sec	*7-15*
RTS Line State	Low RTS	*7-16*
Beep on <BEL>	Disable	*7-16*
Intercharacter Delay	0 msec	*7-17*
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options	Normal Operation	*7-18*
Ignore Unknown Characters	Send Bar Code	*7-18*
Note: The DS3508 supports one stop bit only.		

RS-232 Host Parameters

Various RS-232 hosts use their own parameter default settings. Selecting standard, ICL, Fujitsu, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B, OPOS/JPOS, Olivetti, Omron or Common Use Terminal Equipment (CUTE-LP/LG) sets the defaults listed in *Table 7-2*.

Table 7-2 *Terminal Specific RS-232*

Parameter	ICL	Fujitsu	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B/OPOS/JPOS	Olivetti	Omron	CUTE
Transmit Code ID	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Data Transmission Format	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Data/Suffix	Prefix/Data/ Suffix	Data/Suffix	Prefix/Data/ Suffix
Suffix	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	CR (1013)	ETX (1002)	CR (1013)	CR (1013) ETX (1003)
Baud Rate	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	9600
Parity	Even	None	Odd	Odd	Even	None	Even
Hardware Handshaking	RTS/CTS Option 3	None	RTS/CTS Option 3	RTS/CTS Option 3	None	None	None
Software Handshaking	None	None	None	None	Ack/Nak	None	None
Serial Response Time-out	9.9 Sec.	2 Sec.	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.	9.9 Sec.
Stop Bit Select	One	One	One	One	One	One	One
ASCII Format	8-Bit	8-Bit	8-Bit	8-Bit	7-Bit	8-Bit	7-Bit
Beep On <BEL>	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable	Disable
RTS Line State	High	Low	Low	Low = No data to send	Low	High	High
Prefix	None	None	None	None	STX (1003)	None	STX (1002)

***In the Nixdorf Mode B, if CTS is low, scanning is disabled. When CTS is high, scanning is enabled.**
**** If you scan Nixdorf Mode B without connecting the digital scanner to the proper host, it may appear unable to scan. If this happens, scan a different RS-232 host type within 5 seconds of cycling power to the digital scanner.**
The CUTE host disables all parameter scanning, including Set Defaults. If you inadvertently select CUTE, scan **Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning (01h) on page 4-6*, then change the host selection.

RS-232 Host Parameters (continued)

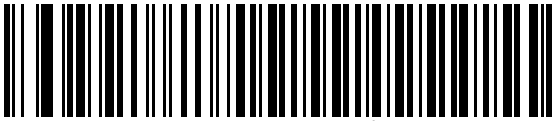
Selecting ICL, Fujitsu, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A, Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B, OPOS/JPOS, Olivetti, Omron or Common Use Terminal Equipment (CUTE-LP/LG) enables the transmission of code ID characters listed in *Table 7-3*. These code ID characters are not programmable and are separate from the Transmit Code ID feature. Do not enable the Transmit Code ID feature for these terminals.

Table 7-3 *Terminal Specific Code ID Characters*

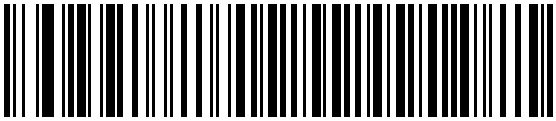
Code Type	ICL	Fujitsu	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode A	Wincor-Nixdorf Mode B/ OPOS/JPOS	Olivetti	Omron	CUTE
UPC-A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
UPC-E	E	E	C	C	C	E	None
EAN-8/JAN-8	FF	FF	B	B	B	FF	None
EAN-13/JAN-13	F	F	A	A	A	F	A
Code 39	C <len>	None	M	M	M <len>	C <len>	3
Codabar	N <len>	None	N	N	N <len>	N <len>	None
Code 128	L <len>	None	K	K	K <len>	L <len>	5
I 2 of 5	I <len>	None	I	I	I <len>	I <len>	1
Code 93	None	None	L	L	L <len>	None	None
D 2 of 5	H <len>	None	H	H	H <len>	H <len>	2
GS1-128	L <len>	None	P	P	P <len>	L <len>	5
MSI	None	None	O	O	O <len>	None	None
Bookland EAN	F	F	A	A	A	F	None
Trioptic	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
Code 11	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
IATA	H<len>	None	H	H	None	None	2
Code 32	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
PDF417	None	None	Q	Q	None	None	6
Datamatrix	None	None	R	R	None	None	4
QR Codes	None	None	U	U	None	None	7
Aztec/Aztec Rune	None	None	V	V	None	None	8
MicroPDF	None	None	S	S	None	None	None
Maxicode	None	None	T	T	None	None	None

RS-232 Host Types

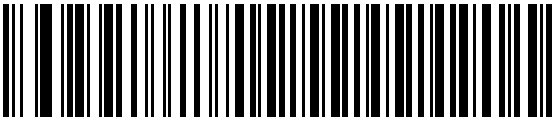
To select an RS-232 host interface, scan one of the following bar codes.



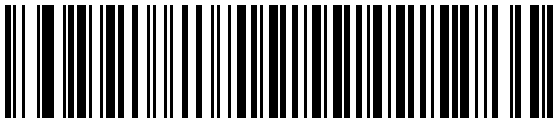
Standard RS-232[1]



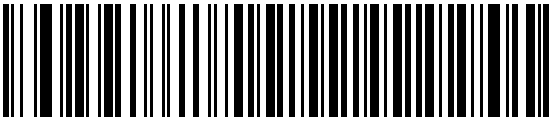
ICL RS-232



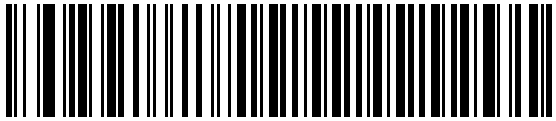
Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode A



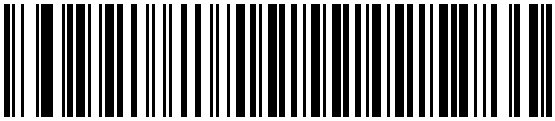
Wincor-Nixdorf RS-232 Mode B



Olivetti ORS4500

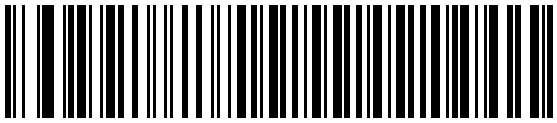


Omron



OPOS/JPOS

RS-232 Host Types (continued)



Fujitsu RS-232

CUTE [2]

[1]Scanning Standard RS-232 activates the RS-232 driver, but does not change port settings (e.g., parity, data bits, handshaking). Selecting another RS-232 host type bar code changes these settings.

[2]The CUTE host disables all parameter scanning, including Set Defaults. If you inadvertently select CUTE, scan **Enable Parameter Bar Code Scanning (01h) on page 4-6*, then change the host selection.

Baud Rate

Baud rate is the number of bits of data transmitted per second. Set the digital scanner's baud rate to match the baud rate setting of the host device. Otherwise, data may not reach the host device or may reach it in distorted form.

***Baud Rate 9600**

Baud Rate 19,200

Baud Rate 38,400

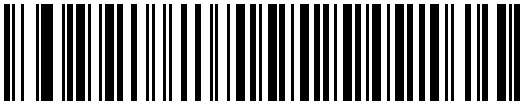
Baud Rate 57,600

Baud Rate 115,200

Parity

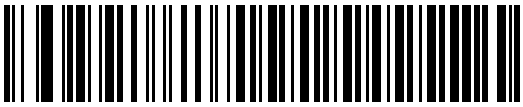
A parity check bit is the most significant bit of each ASCII coded character. Select the parity type according to host device requirements.

- Select **Odd** parity to set the parity bit value to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an odd number of 1 bits.
- Select **Even** parity to set the parity bit value is set to 0 or 1, based on data, to ensure that the coded character contains an even number of 1 bits.
- Select **None** when no parity bit is required.



Odd

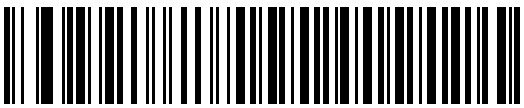
Even



***None**

Data Bits

This parameter allows the digital scanner to interface with devices requiring a 7-bit or 8-bit ASCII protocol.



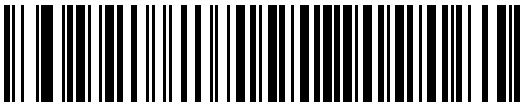
7-Bit

***8-Bit**

Stop Bit Select

The stop bit(s) at the end of each transmitted character marks the end of transmission of one character and prepares the receiving device for the next character in the serial data stream. Select the number of stop bits (one or two) based on the number the receiving terminal is programmed to accommodate. Set the number of stop bits to match host device requirements.

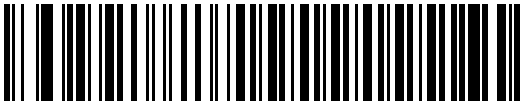
***1 Stop Bit**



2 Stop Bits

Check Receive Errors

Select whether or not to check the parity, framing, and overrun of received characters. The parity value of received characters is verified against the parity parameter selected above.



***Check For Received Errors**

Do Not Check For Received Errors

Hardware Handshaking

The data interface consists of an RS-232 port designed to operate either with or without the hardware handshaking lines, *Request to Send* (RTS), and *Clear to Send* (CTS).

Disable Standard RTS/CTS handshaking to transmit scan data as it becomes available. Select Standard RTS/CTS handshaking to transmit scan data according to the following sequence:

- The digital scanner reads the CTS line for activity. If CTS is asserted, the scanner waits up to Host Serial Response Time-out for the host to de-assert the CTS line. If, after Host Serial Response Time-out (default), the CTS line is still asserted, the scanner sounds a transmit error, and discards any scanned data.
- When the CTS line is de-asserted, the digital scanner asserts the RTS line and waits up to Host Serial Response Time-out for the host to assert CTS. When the host asserts CTS, the scanner transmits data. If, after Host Serial Response Time-out (default), the CTS line is not asserted, the scanner sounds a transmit error, and discards the data.
- When data transmission completes, the digital scanner de-asserts RTS 10 msec after sending the last character.
- The host should respond by negating CTS. The digital scanner checks for a de-asserted CTS upon the next transmission of data.

During the transmission of data, the CTS line should be asserted. If CTS is deasserted for more than 50 ms between characters, the digital scanner aborts transmission, sounds a transmission error, and discards the data.

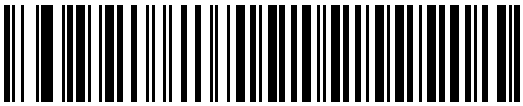
If this communication sequence fails, the digital scanner issues an error indication. In this case, the data is lost and must be rescanned.

If hardware handshaking and software handshaking are both enabled, hardware handshaking takes precedence.

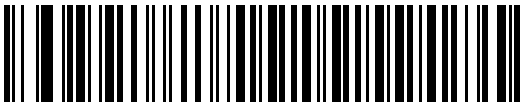
NOTE The DTR signal is jumpered to the active state.

Hardware Handshaking (continued)

- **None**: Scan this bar code to disable hardware handshaking.
- **Standard RTS/CTS**: Scan this bar code to select Standard RTS/CTS Hardware Handshaking.
- **RTS/CTS Option 1**: If you select RTS/CTS Option 1, the digital scanner asserts RTS before transmitting and ignores the state of CTS. The scanner de-asserts RTS when the transmission completes.
- **RTS/CTS Option 2**: If you select Option 2, RTS is always high or low (user-programmed logic level). However, the digital scanner waits for CTS to be asserted before transmitting data. If CTS is not asserted within Host Serial Response Time-out (default), the scanner issues an error indication and discards the data.
- **RTS/CTS Option 3**: If you select Option 3, the digital scanner asserts RTS prior to any data transmission, regardless of the state of CTS. The scanner waits up to Host Serial Response Time-out (default) for CTS to be asserted. If CTS is not asserted during this time, the scanner issues an error indication and discards the data. The digital scanner de-asserts RTS when transmission is complete.



***None**



Standard RTS/CTS

RTS/CTS Option 1

RTS/CTS Option 2

RTS/CTS Option 3

Software Handshaking

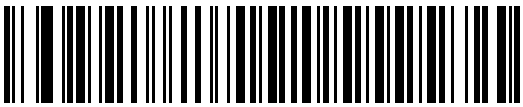
This parameter offers control of the data transmission process in addition to, or instead of, that offered by hardware handshaking. There are five options.

If software handshaking and hardware handshaking are both enabled, hardware handshaking takes precedence.

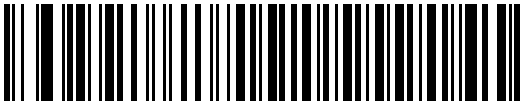
- **None**: Select this to transmit data immediately. The digital scanner expects no response from the host.
- **ACK/NAK**: If you select this option, after transmitting data, the digital scanner expects either an ACK or NAK response from the host. When it receives a NAK, the scanner transmits the same data again and waits for either an ACK or NAK. After three unsuccessful attempts to send data after receiving NAKs, the digital scanner issues an error indication and discards the data.

  The digital scanner waits up to the programmable Host Serial Response Time-out to receive an ACK or NAK. If the scanner does not get a response in this time, it issues an error indication and discards the data. There are no retries when a time-out occurs.
- **ENQ**: If you select this option, the digital scanner waits for an ENQ character from the host before transmitting data. If it does not receive an ENQ within the Host Serial Response Time-out, the digital scanner issues an error indication and discards the data. The host must transmit an ENQ character at least every Host Serial Response Time-out to prevent transmission errors.
- **ACK/NAK with ENQ**: This combines the two previous options. For re-transmissions of data, due to a NAK from the host, an additional ENQ is not required.
- **XON/XOFF**: An XOFF character turns the digital scanner transmission off until the scanner receives an XON character. There are two situations for XON/XOFF:
  - The digital scanner receives an XOFF before has data to send. When the scanner has data to send, it waits up to Host Serial Response Time-out for an XON character before transmission. If it does not receive the XON within this time, the digital scanner issues an error indication and discards the data.
  - The digital scanner receives an XOFF during a transmission. Data transmission then stops after sending the current byte. When the digital scanner receives an XON character, it sends the rest of the data message. The digital scanner waits indefinitely for the XON.

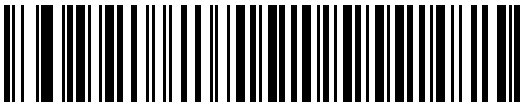
Software Handshaking (continued)



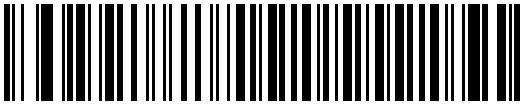
*None



ACK/NAK



ENQ

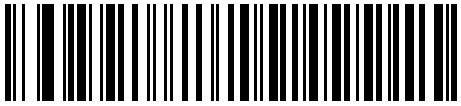


ACK/NAK with ENQ

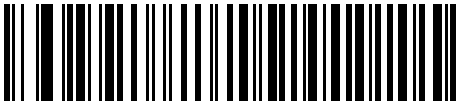
XON/XOFF

Host Serial Response Time-out

This parameter specifies how long the digital scanner waits for an ACK, NAK, or CTS before determining that a transmission error occurred. This only applies when in one of the ACK/NAK software handshaking modes, or RTS/CTS hardware handshaking mode.

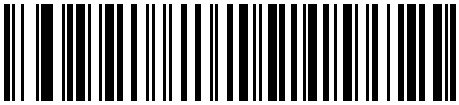


***Minimum: 2 Sec**

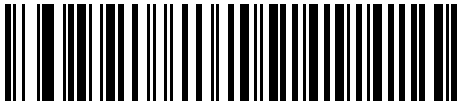


Low: 2.5 Sec

Medium: 5 Sec



High: 7.5 Sec

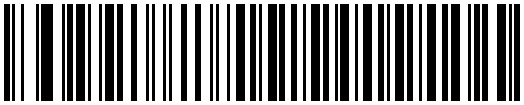


Maximum: 9.9 Sec

RTS Line State

This parameter sets the idle state of the Serial Host RTS line. Scan a bar code below to select **Low RTS** or **High RTS** line state.

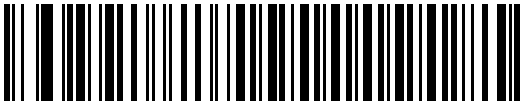
***Host: Low RTS**



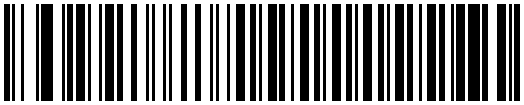
Host: High RTS

Beep on <BEL>

If you enable this parameter, the digital scanner issues a beep when it detects a <BEL> character on the RS-232 serial line. <BEL> indicates an illegal entry or other important event.



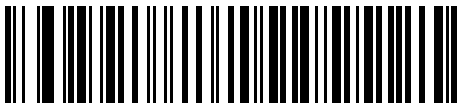
Beep On <BEL> Character (Enable)



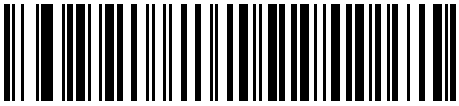
***Do Not Beep On <BEL> Character (Disable)**

Intercharacter Delay

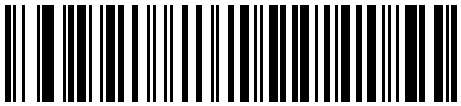
This parameter specifies the intercharacter delay inserted between character transmissions.



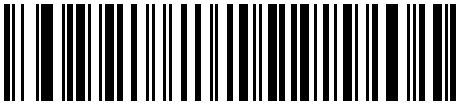
***Minimum: 0 msec**



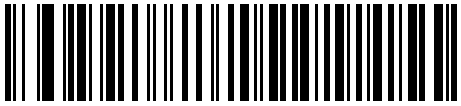
Low: 25 msec



Medium: 50 msec



High: 75 msec

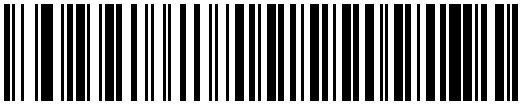


Maximum: 99 msec

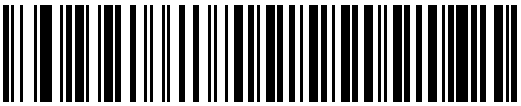
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options

If you selected Nixdorf Mode B, this indicates when the digital scanner beeps and turns on its LED after a decode.

***Normal Operation**
(Beep/LED immediately after decode)



Beep/LED After Transmission

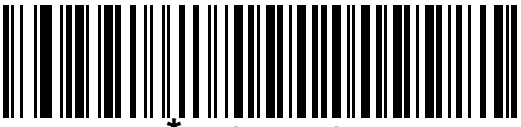


Beep/LED After CTS Pulse

Ignore Unknown Characters

Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Select **Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The digital scanner issues no error beeps.

Select **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send bar code data up to the first unknown character. The digital scanner issues an error beep.



***Send Bar Code**
(with unknown characters)

Do Not Send Bar Codes
(with unknown characters)

ASCII Character Set for RS-232

You can assign the values in *Table 7-4* as prefixes or suffixes for ASCII character data transmission.

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1000	%U	NUL
1001	$A	SOH
1002	$B	STX
1003	$C	ETX
1004	$D	EOT
1005	$E	ENQ
1006	$F	ACK
1007	$G	BELL
1008	$H	BCKSPC
1009	$I	HORIZ TAB
1010	$J	LF/NW LN
1011	$K	VT
1012	$L	FF
1013	$M	CR/ENTER
1014	$N	SO
1015	$O	SI
1016	$P	DLE
1017	$Q	DC1/XON
1018	$R	DC2
1019	$S	DC3/XOFF
1020	$T	DC4
1021	$U	NAK
1022	$V	SYN
1023	$W	ETB
1024	$X	CAN
1025	$Y	EM
1026	$Z	SUB

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1027	%A	ESC
1028	%B	FS
1029	%C	GS
1030	%D	RS
1031	%E	US
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	"
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/O	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	`
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t

Table 7-4 *Prefix/Suffix Values (Continued)*

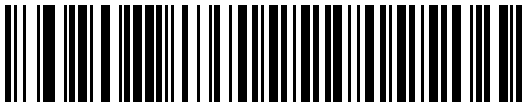
Prefix/Suffix Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Character	ASCII Character
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	|
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~
1127		Undefined
7013		ENTER

Chapter 8 IBM 468X / 469X Interface

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner with an IBM 468X/469X host.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



* Indicates Default — ***Disable Convert to Code 39** — Feature/Option

✓ ***NOTE*** Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

Connecting to an IBM 468X/469X Host

Connect the digital scanner directly to the host interface.

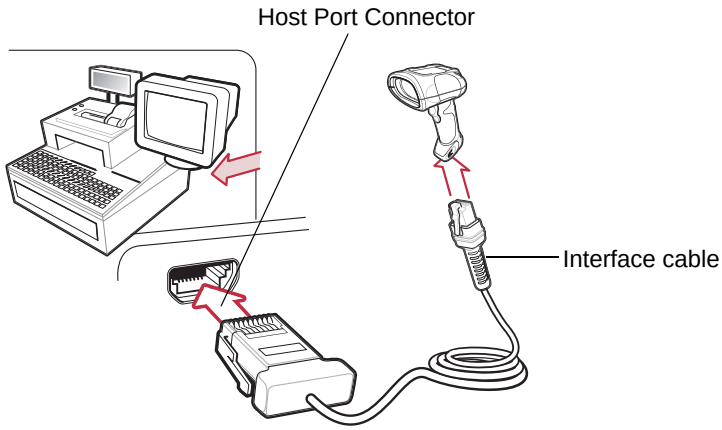


Figure 8-1 *IBM Direct Connection*

NOTE Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 8-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Attach the modular connector of the IBM 46XX interface cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner. See *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*.
2. Connect the other end of the IBM 46XX interface cable to the appropriate port on the host (typically Port 9).
3. Select the port address by scanning the appropriate bar code from *Port Address on page 8-4*.
4. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

NOTE The only required configuration is the port address. The IBM system typically controls other digital scanner parameters.

IBM Parameter Defaults

Table 8-1 lists the defaults for IBM host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the Parameter Descriptions section beginning on page *8-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 8-1 *IBM Host Default Table*

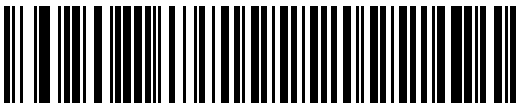
Parameter	Default	Page Number
IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters		
Port Address	None Selected	*8-4*
Convert Unknown to Code 39	Disable	*8-5*

IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters

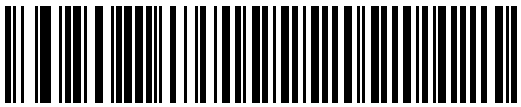
Port Address

This parameter sets the IBM 468X/469X port used.

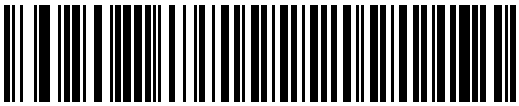
NOTE Scanning one of these bar codes enables the RS-485 interface on the digital scanner.



None Selected



Hand-Held Scanner Emulation (Port 9B)



Non-IBM Scanner Emulation (Port 5B)

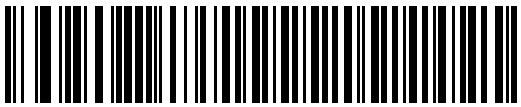
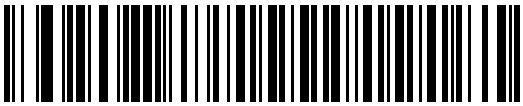


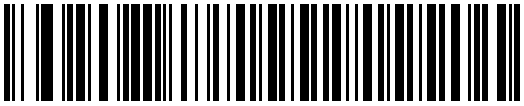
Table Top Scanner Emulation (Port 17)

Convert Unknown to Code 39

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable the conversion of unknown bar code type data to Code 39.



Enable Convert Unknown to Code 39



***Disable Convert Unknown to Code 39**

Chapter 9 Keyboard Wedge Interface

Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up a Keyboard Wedge interface with the digital scanner. With this interface, the digital scanner is connected between the keyboard and host computer, and translates bar code data into keystrokes. The host computer accepts the keystrokes as if they originated from the keyboard. This mode adds bar code reading functionality to a system designed for manual keyboard input. Keyboard keystrokes are simply passed through.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.

* Indicates Default — ***North American** — Feature/Option

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

Connecting a Keyboard Wedge Interface

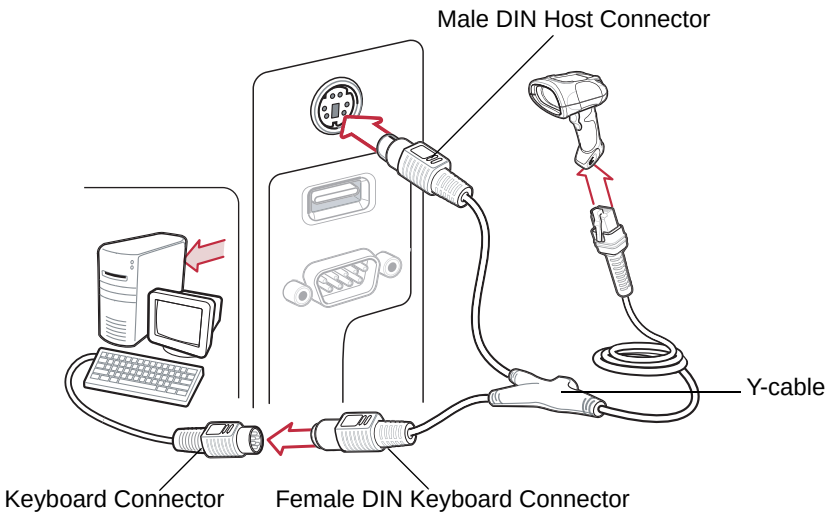


Figure 9-1 *Keyboard Wedge Connection with Y-cable*

To connect the Keyboard Wedge interface Y-cable:

NOTE Interface cables vary depending on configuration. The connectors illustrated in *Figure 9-1* are examples only. The connectors may be different than those illustrated, but the steps to connect the digital scanner are the same.

1. Turn off the host and unplug the keyboard connector.
2. Attach the modular connector of the Y-cable to the cable interface port on the digital scanner. See *Installing the Interface Cable on page 1-3*.
3. Connect the round male DIN host connector of the Y-cable to the keyboard port on the host device.
4. Connect the round female DIN keyboard connector of the Y-cable to the keyboard connector.
5. If needed, attach the optional power supply to the connector in the middle of the Y-cable.
6. Ensure that all connections are secure.
7. Turn on the host system.
8. Select the Keyboard Wedge host type by scanning the appropriate bar code from *Keyboard Wedge Host Types on page 9-4*.
9. To modify any other parameter options, scan the appropriate bar codes in this chapter.

Keyboard Wedge Parameter Defaults

Table 9-1 lists the defaults for Keyboard Wedge host parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) in the Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters section beginning on page *9-4*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

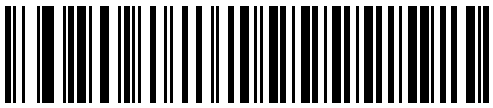
Table 9-1 *Keyboard Wedge Host Default Table*

Parameter	Default	Page Number
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters		
Keyboard Wedge Host Type	IBM PC/AT& IBM PC Compatibles	*9-4*
Country Types (Country Codes)	North American	*9-5*
Ignore Unknown Characters	Transmit	*9-7*
Keystroke Delay	No Delay	*9-7*
Intra-Keystroke Delay	Disable	*9-8*
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation	Disable	*9-8*
Caps Lock On	Disable	*9-9*
Caps Lock Override	Disable	*9-9*
Convert Wedge Data	No Convert	*9-10*
Function Key Mapping	Disable	*9-10*
FN1 Substitution	Disable	*9-11*
Send and Make Break	Send	*9-11*

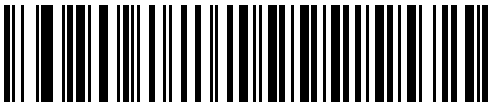
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters

Keyboard Wedge Host Types

Select the Keyboard Wedge host by scanning one of the bar codes below.



IBM PC/AT & IBM PC Compatibles

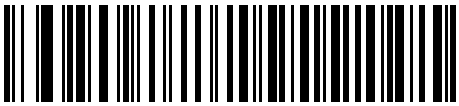


IBM AT Notebook

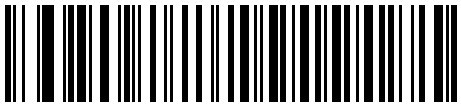
Keyboard Wedge Country Types - Country Codes

Scan the bar code corresponding to the keyboard type. If your keyboard type does not appear, see *Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation on page 9-8*.

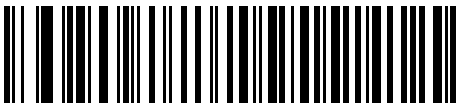
***North American**



German Windows



French Windows

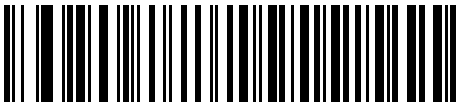


French Canadian Windows 95/98

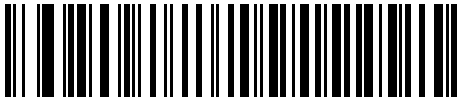
French Canadian Windows XP/2000

French Belgian Windows

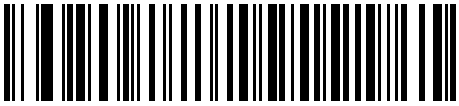
Keyboard Wedge Country Types - Country Codes (continued)



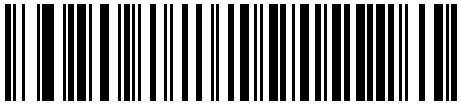
Spanish Windows



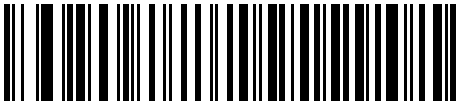
Italian Windows



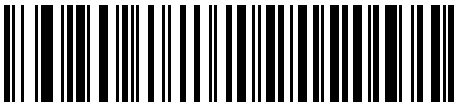
Swedish Windows



UK English Windows



Japanese Windows



Portuguese-Brazilian Windows

Ignore Unknown Characters

Unknown characters are characters the host does not recognize. Select **Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send all bar code data except for unknown characters. The digital scanner issues no error beeps.

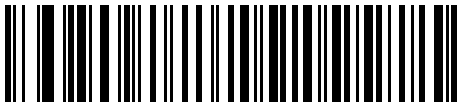
Select **Do Not Send Bar Codes With Unknown Characters** to send bar code data up to the first unknown character. The digital scanner issues an error beep.

***Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters (Transmit)**

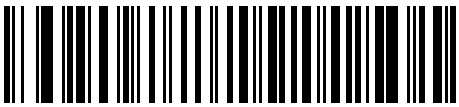
Do Not Send Bar Codes with Unknown Characters

Keystroke Delay

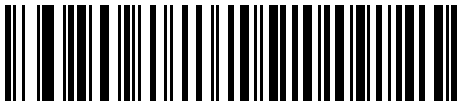
This is the delay in milliseconds between emulated keystrokes. Scan a bar code below to increase the delay when hosts require a slower transmission of data.



***No Delay**



Medium Delay (20 msec)



Long Delay (40 msec)

Intra-Keystroke Delay

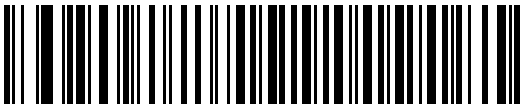
Enable this to insert an additional delay between each emulated key depression and release. This sets the Keystroke Delay parameter to a minimum of 5 msec as well.

Enable

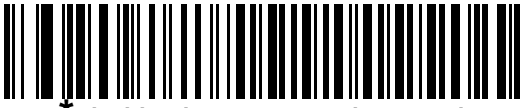
***Disable**

Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation

This allows emulation of most other country keyboard types not listed in *Keyboard Wedge Country Types - Country Codes on page 9-5* in a Microsoft® operating system environment.



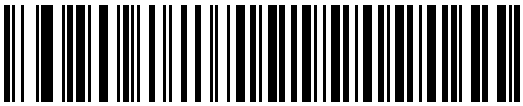
Enable Alternate Numeric Keypad



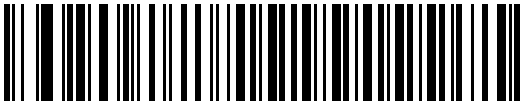
***Disable Alternate Numeric Keypad**

Caps Lock On

Enable this to emulate keystrokes as if the **Caps Lock** key is always pressed.



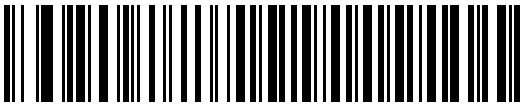
Enable Caps Lock On



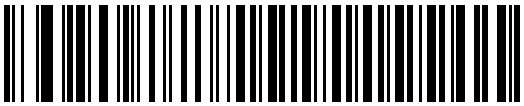
***Disable Caps Lock On**

Caps Lock Override

If you enable this, on AT or AT Notebook hosts, the scanner ignores the state of the **Caps Lock** key. Therefore, an ‘A’ in the bar code transmits as an ‘A’ regardless of the state of the keyboard’s **Caps Lock** key.



Enable Caps Lock Override

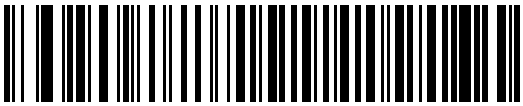


***Disable Caps Lock Override**

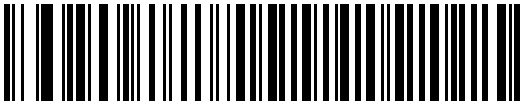
NOTE If both Caps Lock On and Caps Lock Override are enabled, Caps Lock Override takes precedence.

Convert Wedge Data

Enable this to convert all bar code data to the selected case.



Convert to Upper Case



Convert to Lower Case

***No Convert**

Function Key Mapping

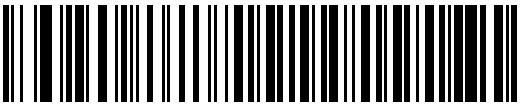
ASCII values under 32 are normally sent as control key sequences (see *Table 9-2 on page 9-13*). Enable this parameter to send the keys in bold in place of the standard key mapping. Table entries that do not have a bold entry remain the same whether or not you enable this parameter.

Enable

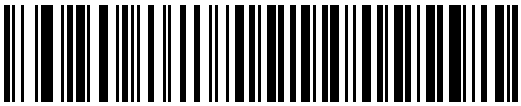
***Disable**

FN1 Substitution

Enable this to replace FN1 characters in an EAN128 bar code with a user-selected keystroke (see *FN1 Substitution on page 9-11*).



Enable



***Disable**

Send Make and Break

Enable this to prevent sending the scan codes for releasing a key.

***Send Make and Break Scan Codes**

Send Make Scan Code Only

NOTE Windows-based systems must use **Send Make and Break Scan Codes**.

Keyboard Maps

Refer to the following keyboard maps for prefix/suffix keystroke parameters. To program the prefix/suffix values, see the bar codes on *page 4-49*.

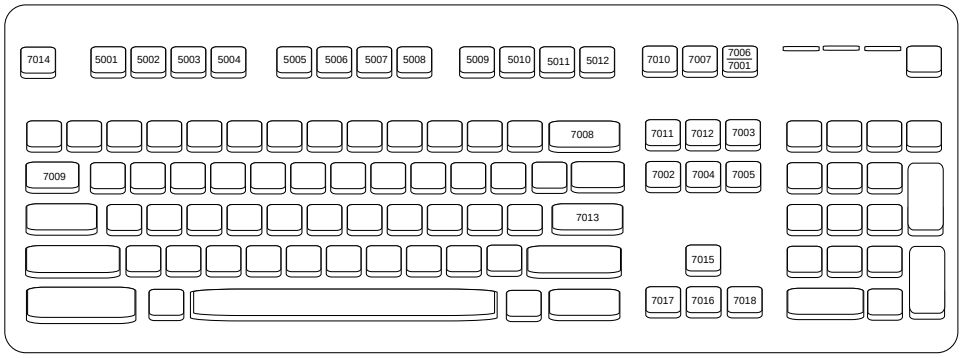


Figure 9-2 *IBM PS2 Type Keyboard*

ASCII Character Set for Keyboard Wedge

NOTE Code 39 Full ASCII interprets the bar code special character ($ + % /) preceding a Code 39 character and assigns an ASCII character value to the pair. For example, if you enable Code 39 Full ASCII and scan **+B**, it transmits as **b**, **%J** as **?**, and **%V** as @. Scanning **ABC%I** outputs the keystroke equivalent of **ABC >.**

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1001	$A	CTRL A
1002	$B	CTRL B
1003	$C	CTRL C
1004	$D	CTRL D
1005	$E	CTRL E
1006	$F	CTRL F
1007	$G	CTRL G
1008	$H	CTRL H/**BACKSPACE**[1]
1009	$I	CTRL I/**HORIZONTAL TAB**[1]
1010	$J	CTRL J
1011	$K	CTRL K
1012	$L	CTRL L
1013	$M	CTRL M/**ENTER**[1]
1014	$N	CTRL N
1015	$O	CTRL O
1016	$P	CTRL P
1017	$Q	CTRL Q
1018	$R	CTRL R
1019	$S	CTRL S
1020	$T	CTRL T
1021	$U	CTRL U
1022	$V	CTRL V
1023	$W	CTRL W

[1]**The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 9-10*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.**

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1024	$X	CTRL X
1025	$Y	CTRL Y
1026	$Z	CTRL Z
1027	%A	CTRL [/**ESC**[1]
1028	%B	CTRL \
1029	%C	CTRL]
1030	%D	CTRL 6
1031	%E	CTRL -
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	“
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/O	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 9-10*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1052	4	4
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 9-10*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	‘
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 9-10*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 9-2 *Keyboard Wedge ASCII Character Set (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char.acter	Keystroke
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	|
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~

[1]The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled *Function Key Mapping on page 9-10*. Otherwise, the unbolded keystroke transmits.

Table 9-3 *Keyboard Wedge ALT Key Character Set*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G

Table 9-3 *Keyboard Wedge ALT Key Character Set (Continued)*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

Table 9-4 *Keyboard Wedge GUI Key Character Set*

GUI Keys	Keystrokes
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7

Table 9-4 *Keyboard Wedge GUI Key Character Set (Continued)*

GUI Keys	Keystrokes
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P
3081	GUI Q
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z

Table 9-5 *Keyboard Wedge F Key Character Set*

F Keys	Keystroke
5001	F1
5002	F2
5003	F3
5004	F4
5005	F5
5006	F6
5007	F7
5008	F8
5009	F9
5010	F10
5011	F11
5012	F12
5013	F13
5014	F14
5015	F15
5016	F16
5017	F17
5018	F18
5019	F19
5020	F20
5021	F21
5022	F22
5023	F23
5024	F24

Table 9-6 *Keyboard Wedge Numeric Keypad Character Set*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	undefined
6045	-

Table 9-6 *Keyboard Wedge Numeric Keypad Character Set (Continued)*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

Table 9-7 *Keyboard Wedge Extended Keypad Character Set*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	Pg Up
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape

Table 9-7 *Keyboard Wedge Extended Keypad Character Set (Continued)*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Dn Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

Chapter 10 OCR Programming

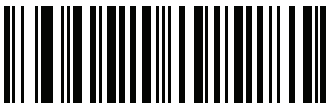
Introduction

This chapter describes how to set up the digital scanner for OCR programming. The digital scanner can read 6 to 60 point OCR typeface. It supports font types OCR-A, OCR-B, MICR-E13B, and US Currency Serial Number.

OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit.

All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.

Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



* Indicates Default — ***Disable OCR-A** — Feature/Option

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces are not merging.

OCR Parameter Defaults

Table 10-1 lists the defaults for OCR parameters. To change any option, scan the appropriate bar code(s) provided in the Parameter Descriptions section beginning on page 10-3.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, symbologies, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 10-1 *OCR Programming Default Table*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
OCR Programming Parameters			
OCR-A	F1h A8h	Disable	10-3
OCR-A Variant	F1h ACh	Full ASCII	10-3
OCR-B	F1h A9h	Disable	10-5
OCR-B Variant	F1h ADh	Full ASCII	10-6
MICR E13B	F1h AAh	Disable	10-9
US Currency	F1h ABh	Disable	10-10
OCR Orientation	F1h AFh	0º	10-10
OCR Lines	F1h B3h	1	10-12
OCR Minimum Characters	F1h B1h	3	10-12
OCR Maximum Characters	F1h B2h	100	10-13
OCR Security Level	F1h 2Ah	80	10-13
OCR Subset	F1h AEh	Selected font variant	10-14
OCR Quiet Zone	F1h B7h	50	10-14
OCR Bright Illumination	F1h BDh	Disable	10-15
OCR Template	F1h 23h	54R	10-16
OCR Check Digit Modulus	F1h B0h	1	10-25
OCR Check Digit Multiplier	F1h BCh	121212121212	10-26
OCR Check Digit Validation	F1h B6h	None	10-27

OCR Programming Parameters

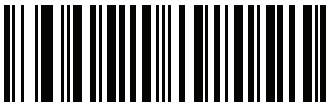
Enable/Disable OCR-A

Parameter # F1h A8h

To enable or disable OCR-A, scan one of the following bar codes.

NOTE OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit. See *OCR Subset on page 10-14* and *OCR Template on page 10-16*.

NOTE All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.



Enable OCR-A

***Disable OCR-A**

OCR-A Variant

Parameter # F1 ACh

Font variant sets a processing algorithm and default character subset for the given font. To choose a variant, scan one of the following bar codes. Selecting the most appropriate font variant optimizes performance and accuracy.

OCR-A supports the following variants:

- OCR-A Full ASCII

  !"#$()*+,-./0123456789<>ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ\^

- OCR-A Reserved 1

  $*+-./0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-A Reserved 2

  $*+-./0123456789<>ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-A Banking

  -0123456789<>

OCR-A Variant (continued)

Special banking characters output as the following representative characters:

- ⑂ outputs as f
- ⑁ outputs as c
- ⑃ outputs as h

NOTE Enable OCR-A before setting this parameter. If disabling OCR-A, set the variant to its default (OCR-A Full ASCII).

***OCR-A Full ASCII**
(00h)

OCR-A Reserved 1
(01h)

OCR-A Reserved 2
(02h)

OCR-A Banking
(03h)

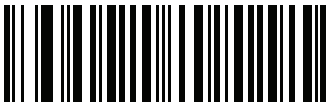
Enable/Disable OCR-B

Parameter # F1h A9h

To enable or disable OCR-B, scan one of the following bar codes.

NOTE OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit. See *OCR Subset on page 10-14* and *OCR Template on page 10-16*.

NOTE All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.



Enable OCR-B

***Disable OCR-B**

OCR-B Variant

Parameter # F1 ADh

OCR-B has the following variants. Selecting the most appropriate font variant affects performance and accuracy.

- OCR-B Full ASCII

  !#$%()*+,-./0123456789<>ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ^|Ñ

- OCR-B Banking

  #+-0123456789<>JNP|

- OCR-B Limited

  +,-./0123456789<>ACENPSTVX

- OCR-B Travel Document Version 1 (TD1) 3-Line ID Cards

  -0123456789<ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-B ISBN 10-Digit Book Numbers

  -0123456789>BCEINPSXz

- OCR-B ISBN 10 or 13-Digit Book Numbers

  -0123456789>BCEINPSXz

- OCR-B Travel Document Version 2 (TD2) 2-Line ID Cards

  -0123456789<ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-B Visa Type A

  -0123456789<ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

- OCR-B Visa Type B

  -0123456789<ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZÑ

To choose a variant, scan one of the following bar codes. Selecting the following OCR-B variants automatically sets the appropriate *OCR Lines on page 10-12*. These five variants invoke extensive special algorithms and checking for that particular document type:

Variant	OCR Lines Setting
TD1 ID Cards	3
TD2 ID Cards	2
Visa Type A	2
Visa Type B	2

Selecting one of the ISBN Book Numbers automatically applies the appropriate ISBN checksum, so you do not need to set this.

NOTE Enable OCR-B before setting this parameter. If disabling OCR-B, set the variant to its default (OCR-B Full ASCII).

OCR-B Variant (continued)

***OCR-B Full ASCII**
(00h)

OCR-B Banking
(01h)

OCR-B Limited
(02h)

OCR-B Travel Document Version 1 (TD1)
3 Line ID Cards
(03h)

OCR-B Variant (continued)

OCR-B ISBN 10-Digit Book Numbers
(06h)

OCR-B ISBN 10 or 13-Digit Book Numbers
(07h)

OCR-B Travel Document Version 2 (TD2)
2-Line ID Cards
(08h)

OCR-B Visa Type A
(09h)

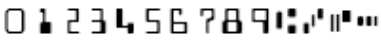
OCR-B Visa Type B
(0Ah)

Enable/Disable MICR E13B

Parameter # F1h AAh

To enable or disable MICR E13B, scan one of the following bar codes.

MICR E 13B uses the following characters:



TOAD characters (Transit, On Us, Amount, and Dash) output as the following representative characters:

outputs as **t**

outputs as **a**

outputs as **o**

 outputs as **d**

NOTE OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit. See *OCR Subset on page 10-14* and *OCR Template on page 10-16*.

NOTE All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.

Enable MICR E13B

***Disable MICR E13B**

Enable/Disable US Currency Serial Number

Parameter # F1 ABh

To enable or disable US Currency Serial Number, scan one of the following bar codes.

NOTE OCR is not as secure as a bar code. To decrease OCR misdecodes and speed OCR reading, set an accurate OCR template and character subset, and use a check digit. See *OCR Subset on page 10-14* and *OCR Template on page 10-16*.

NOTE All OCR fonts are disabled by default. Enabling OCR can slow bar code decoding. Enabling more than one OCR font could also slow OCR decoding and impact OCR decoding accuracy.

Enable US Currency

***Disable US Currency**

OCR Orientation

Parameter # F1 AFh

Select one of five options to specify the orientation of an OCR string to be read:

- 0^{o} to the imaging engine (default)
- 270^{o} clockwise (or 90^{o} counterclockwise) to the imaging engine
- 180^{o} (upside down) to the imaging engine
- 90^{o} clockwise to the imaging engine
- Omnidirectional

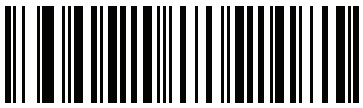
Setting an incorrect orientation can cause misdecodes.

OCR Orientation (continued)

***OCR Orientation 0°**
(00h)

OCR Orientation 270° Clockwise
(01h)

OCR Orientation 180° Clockwise
(02h)



OCR Orientation 90° Clockwise
(03h)

OCR Orientation Omnidirectional
(04h)

OCR Lines

Parameter # F1 B3h

To select the number of OCR lines to decode, scan one of the following bar codes. Selecting Visas, TD1, or TD2 ID cards automatically sets the appropriate **OCR Lines**. Also see *OCR-B Variant on page 10-6*.

***OCR 1 Line**
(001h)

OCR 2 Lines
(002h)

OCR 3 Lines
(003h)

OCR Minimum Characters

Parameter # F1 B1h

To select the minimum number of OCR characters (not including spaces) per line to decode, scan the following bar code, then scan a three-digit number between 003 and 100 using the bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* representing the number of OCR characters to decode. Strings of OCR characters less than the minimum are ignored. The default is 003.

OCR Minimum Characters

OCR Maximum Characters

Parameter # F1 B2h

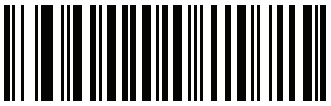
To select the maximum number of OCR characters (including spaces) per line to decode, scan the following bar code, then scan a three-digit number between 003 and 100 using the bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* representing the number of OCR characters to decode. Strings of OCR characters greater than the maximum are ignored. The default is 100.

OCR Maximum Characters

OCR Security Level

Parameter # F1 2Ah

To select the OCR decoding security/confidence level, scan the following bar code, then scan a two-digit number using the bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* representing the level of confidence. Greater numbers minimize OCR decoding errors but reduce performance. Setting a value that is too high can result in failure to decode. Setting a value that is too low can cause decoding errors. The range of the security level is 10 - 90 and the default is 80.



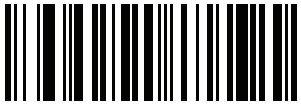
OCR Security Level

OCR Subset

Parameter # F1 AEh

Set an OCR subset to define a custom group of characters in place of a preset font variant. For example, if scanning only numbers and the letters A, B, and C, create a subset of just these characters to speed decoding. This applies a designated OCR Subset across all enabled OCR fonts.

To set or modify the OCR font subset, first enable the appropriate OCR font(s). Next, scan the following bar code, then scan numbers and letters to form the OCR Subset from the alphanumeric keyboard in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. Then scan **End of Message** in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*.



OCR Subset

To cancel an OCR subset, for OCR-A or OCR-B, scan OCR-A variant **Full ASCII**, or OCR-B variant **Full ASCII**.

For MICR E13B or US Currency Serial Number, create a subset which includes all allowed characters in that character set, or scan an option from the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-5* and re-program the digital scanner.

OCR Quiet Zone

Parameter # F1h B7h

This option sets the OCR quiet zone. The digital scanner stops scanning a field when it detects a sufficiently wide blank space. The width of this space is defined by the End of Field option. Used with parsers that tolerate slanted characters, the End of Field count is roughly a count of 8 for a character width. For example if set to 15, then two character widths are an end of line indicator for the parser. Larger end of field numbers require bigger quiet zones at each end of text line.

To set a quiet zone, scan the following bar code, then scan a two-digit number using the numeric keypad in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. The range of the quiet zone is 20 - 99 and the default is 50, indicating a six character width quiet zone.

OCR Quiet Zone

OCR Bright Illumination

Parameter # F1h BDh

When enabled, image contrast is improved for OCR scanning. Motorola recommends enabling this when the OCR string is longer than 20 characters, and for applications with busy backgrounds such as check or VISA reading.

Enable OCR Bright Illumination

***Disable OCR Bright Illumination**

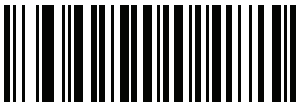
NOTE Enabling **OCR Bright Illumination** causes the aiming pattern to blink due to the lower frame rate setting.

OCR Template

Parameter # F1 23h

This option creates a template for precisely matching scanned OCR characters to a desired input format. Carefully constructing an OCR template eliminates scanning errors.

To set or modify the OCR decode template, scan the *OCR Template* bar code, then bar codes corresponding to numbers and letters on the following pages to form the template expression. Then scan **End of Message** in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. The default is **54R** which accepts any character OCR strings.



OCR Template

End of Message

Required Digit (9)

9

Only a numeric character is allowed in this position.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
99999	12987	30517	123AB

Required Alpha (A)

A

Only an alpha character is allowed in this position.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
AAA	ABC	WXY	12F

Optional Alphanumeric (1)

1

When this option appears in the template string, the data validator accepts an alphanumeric character if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
99991	1234A	12345	1234<

Optional Alpha (2)

2

When this option appears in the template string, the data validator accepts an alpha character if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
AAAA2	ABCDE	WXYZ	ABCD6

Alpha or Digit (3)

3

The data validator requires an alphanumeric character in this position to validate the incoming data.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
33333	12ABC	WXY34	12AB<

Any Including Space & Reject (4)

4

The template accepts any character in this position, including space and reject. Rejects are represented as an underscore (_) in the output. This is a good selection for troubleshooting.

Template	Valid data	Valid data
99499	12$34	34_98

Any except Space & Reject (5)

5

The template accepts any character in this position except a space or reject.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
55999	A.123	*Z456	A BCD

Optional Digit (7)

7

When this option appears in the template string, the template accepts a numeric character if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
99977	12345	789	789AB

Digit or Fill (8)

8

The data validator accepts any numeric or fill character in this position.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
88899	12345	>>789	<<789

Alpha or Fill (F)

F

The data validator accepts any alpha or fill character in this position.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
AAAFF	ABCXY	LMN>>	ABC<5

Optional Space ( )

Space

When this option appears in the template string, the template accepts a space if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
99 99	12 34	1234	67891

Optional Small Special (.)

.

When this option appears in the template string, the data validator accepts a special character if present. Optional characters are not allowed as the first character(s) in a field of like characters. Small special characters are **-** , and **.**

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
AA.99	MN.35	XY98	XYZ12

Other Template Operators

These template operators assist in capturing, delimiting, and formatting scanned OCR data.

Literal String (" and +)

“

+

Use either of these delimiting characters surrounding characters from the alphanumeric keyboard in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide* to define a literal string within a template that must be present in scanned OCR data. There are two characters used to delimit required literal strings; if one of the delimiter characters is present in the desired literal string, use the other delimiter.

Template	Valid data	Invalid data
"35+BC"	35+BC	AB+22

New Line (E)

E

To create a template of multiple lines, add **E** between the template of each single line.

Template	Valid data	Valid data	Invalid data
999EAAAA	321	987	XYZW
	BCAD	ZXYW	12

String Extract (C)

C

This operator combined with others defines a string of characters to extract from the scanned data. The string extract is structured as follows:

```
CbPe
```

Where:

- C is the string extract operator
- b is the string begin delimiter
- P is the category (one or more numeric or alpha characters) describing the string representation
- e is the string end delimiter

Values for b and e can be any scannable character. They are included in the output stream.

Template	Incoming data	Output
C>A>	XQ3>ABCDE>	>ABCDE>
	->ATHRUZ>123	>ATHRUZ>
	1ABCZXYZ	No Output

Ignore to End of Field (D)

D

This operator causes all characters after a template to be ignored. Use this as the last character in a template expression. Examples for the template 999D:

Template	Incoming data	Output
999D	123-PED	123
	357298	357
	193	193

Skip Until (P1)

P

1

This operator allows skipping over characters until a specific character type or a literal string is detected. It can be used in two ways:

```
P1ct
```

Where:

- `P1` is the Skip Until operator
- `c` is the type of character that triggers the start of output
- `t` is one or more template characters

```
P1"s"t
```

Where:

- `P1` is the Skip Until operator
- `"s"` is one or more literal string characters (see *Literal String (" and +) on page 10-20*) that trigger the start of output
- `t` is one or more template characters

The trigger character or literal string is included in output from a Skip Until operator, and the first character in the template should accommodate this trigger.

Template	Incoming data	Output
P1"PN"AA999	123PN9876	PN9876
	PN1234	PN1234
	X-PN3592	PN3592

Skip Until Not (P0)

P

0

This operator allows skipping over characters until a specific character type or a literal string is not matched in the output stream. It can be used in two ways:

```
P0ct
```

Where:

- P0 is the Skip Until Not operator
- c is the type of character that triggers the start of output
- t is one or more template characters

```
P0"s"t
```

Where:

- P0 is the Skip Until Not operator
- "s" is one or more literal string characters (see *Literal String (" and +) on page 10-20*) that trigger the start of output
- t is one or more template characters

The trigger character or literal string is not included in output from a Skip Until Not operator.

Template	Incoming data	Output
P0A9999	BPN3456	3456
	PN1234	PN1234
	5341	5341

Template	Incoming data	Output
P0"PN"9999	PN3456	3456
	5341	5341
	PNPN7654	7654

Repeat Previous (R)

R

This operator allows a template character to repeat one or more times, allowing the capture of variable-length scanned data. The following examples capture two required alpha characters followed by one or more required digits:

Template	Incoming data	Output
AA9R	AB3	AB3
	PN12345	PN12345
	32RM52700	No output

Scroll Until Match (S)

S

This operator steps through scanned data one character at a time until the data matches the template.

Template	Incoming data	Output
S99999	AB3	No Output
	PN12345	12345
	32RM52700	52700

Template Examples

Following are sample templates with descriptions of valid data for each definition.

Field Definition	Description
"M"99977	**M** followed by three digits and two optional digits.
"X"997777"X"	**X** followed by two digits, four optional digits, and an X.
9959775599	Two digits followed by any character, a digit, two optional digits, any two characters, and two digits.
A55"-"999"-"99	A letter followed by two characters, a dash, three digits, a dash, and two digits.
33A"."99	Two alphanumeric characters followed by a letter, a period, and two digits.
999992991	Five digits followed by an optional alpha, two digits, and an optional alphanumeric.
"PN98"	Literal field - **PN98**

OCR Check Digit Modulus

Parameter # F1h B0h

This option sets OCR module check digit calculation. The check digit is the last digit (in the right most position) in an OCR string and improves the accuracy of the collected data. The check digit is the end product of a calculation made on the incoming data. For check digit calculation, for example Modulus 10, alpha and numeric characters are assigned numeric weights (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 10-26*). The calculation is applied to the character weights and the resulting check digit is added to the end of the data. If the incoming data does not match the check digit, the data is considered corrupt.

The selected check digit option does not take effect until you set **OCR Check Digit Validation**.

To choose the Check Digit Modulus, such as 10 for modulo 10, scan the following bar code, then scan a three-digit number from 001 to 099 representing the check digit using the numeric keypad in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. The default is **1**.

OCR Check Digit

OCR Check Digit Multiplier

Parameter # F1h BCh

This option sets OCR check digit multipliers for the character positions. For check digit validation, each character in scanned data has an equivalent weight used in the check digit calculation. DS9808 OCR ships with the following weight equivalents:

0 = 0	A = 10	K = 20	U = 30
1 = 1	B = 11	L = 21	V = 31
2 = 2	C = 12	M = 22	W = 32
3 = 3	D = 13	N = 23	X = 33
4 = 4	E = 14	O = 24	Y = 34
5 = 5	F = 15	P = 25	Z = 35
6 = 6	G = 16	Q = 26	Space = 0
7 = 7	H = 17	R = 27	
8 = 8	I = 18	S = 28	
9 = 9	J = 19	T = 29	

All other characters are equivalent to one (1).

You can define the multiplier string if it is different from the default.

121212121212 (default)

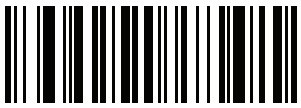
123456789A (for ISBN, Product Add Right to Left. See *OCR Check Digit Validation on page 10-27*)

For example:

ISBN	0	2	0	1	1	8	3	9	9	4	
Multiplier	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Product	0	18	0	7	6	40	12	27	18	4	
Product add	0+	18+	0+	7+	6+	40+	12+	27+	18+	4=	132

ISBN uses modulo 11 for its check digit. In this case, 132 is divisible by 11, so it passes the check digit.

To set the check digit multiplier, scan the following bar code, then scan numbers and letters to form the multiplier string from the alphanumeric keyboard in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*. Then scan **End of Message** in the *Advanced Data Formatting Guide*.



OCR Check Digit Multiplier

OCR Check Digit Validation

Parameter # F1h B6h

Use **OCR Check Digit Validation** to protect against scanning errors by applying a check digit validation scheme. The following is a list of options.

None

No check digit validation, indicating no check digit is applied. This is the default.

***No Check Digit (00h)**

Product Add Left to Right

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 10-26*). Each digit representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the multiplier, and the sum of these products is computed. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is zero.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 132456 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	3	2	4	5	6	
Multiplier	1	2	3	4	5	6	
Product	1	6	6	16	25	36	
Product add	1+	6+	6+	16+	25+	36=	90

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 90 is divisible by 10 (the remainder is zero).

Product Add Left to Right (03h)

Product Add Right to Left

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 10-26*). The check digit multiplier is reversed in order. Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the reversed multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of these products is computed. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is zero.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 132459 (check digit is 9)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	3	2	4	5	9	
Multiplier	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Product	6	15	8	12	10	9	
Product add	6+	15+	8+	12+	10+	9=	60

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 60 is divisible by 10 (the remainder is 0).

Product Add Right to Left (01h)

Digit Add Left to Right

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 10-26*). Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of each individual digit in all of the products is then calculated. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is zero.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 132456 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	3	2	4	5	6	
Multiplier	1	2	3	4	5	6	
Product	1	6	6	16	25	36	
Digit add	1+	6+	6+	1+6+	2+5+	3+6=	36

The Check Digit Modulus is 12. It passes because 36 is divisible by 12 (the remainder is 0).

Digit Add Left to Right (04h)

Digit Add Right to Left

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 10-26*). The check digit multiplier is reversed in order. Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the reversed multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of each individual digit in all of the products is then calculated. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is zero.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 132456 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	3	2	4	5	6	
Multiplier	6	5	4	3	2	1	
Product	6	15	8	12	10	6	
Digit add	6+	1+5+	8+	1+2+	1+0+	6=	30

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 30 is divisible by 10 (the remainder is 0).

Digit Add Right to Left (02h)

Product Add Right to Left Simple Remainder

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 10-26*). The check digit multiplier is reversed in order. Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the reversed multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of these products **except for the check digit's product** is computed. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is equal to the check digit's product.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 122456 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	2	2	4	5		6
Multiplier	6	5	4	3	2		1
Product	6	10	8	12	10		6
Product add	6+	10+	8+	12+	10=	46	6

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 46 divided by 10 leaves a remainder of 6.

Product Add Right to Left Simple Remainder (05h)

Digit Add Right To Left Simple Remainder

Each character in the scanned data is assigned a numeric value (see *OCR Check Digit Multiplier on page 10-26*). The check digit multiplier is reversed in order. Each value representing a character in the scanned data is multiplied by its corresponding digit in the reversed multiplier, resulting in a product for each character in the scanned data. The sum of each individual digit in all of the products **except for the check digit's product** is then calculated. The check digit passes if this sum modulo Check Digit Modulus is equal to the check digit's product.

Example:

Scanned data numeric value is 122459 (check digit is 6)

Check digit multiplier string is 123456

Digit	1	2	2	4	5		9
Multiplier	6	5	4	3	2		1
Product	6	10	8	12	10		9
Digit add	6+	1+0+	8+	1+2+	1+0=	19	9

The Check Digit Modulus is 10. It passes because 19 divided by 10 leaves a remainder of 9.

Digit Add Right to Left Simple Remainder (06h)

Health Industry - HIBCC43

This is the health industry module 43 check digit standard.

Health Industry - HIBCC43 (09h)

Chapter 11 Symbologies

Introduction

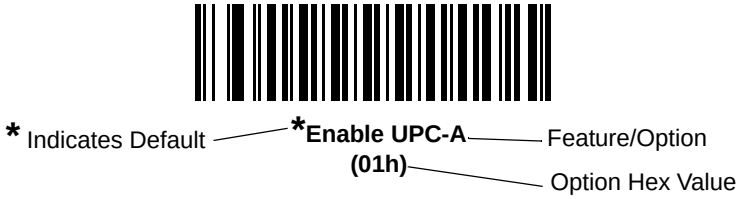
This chapter describes symbology features and provides programming bar codes for selecting these features. Before programming, follow the instructions in *Chapter 1, Getting Started*.

To set feature values, scan a single bar code or a short bar code sequence. The settings are stored in non-volatile memory and are preserved even when the digital scanner powers down.

NOTE Most computer monitors allow scanning the bar codes directly on the screen. When scanning from the screen, be sure to set the document magnification to a level where you can see the bar code clearly, and bars and/or spaces do not merge.

Select a host type (see each host chapter for specific host information) after the power-up beeps sound. This is only necessary upon the first power-up when connected to a new host.

To return all features to default values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-5*. Throughout the programming bar code menus, asterisks (*) indicate default values.



Scanning Sequence Examples

In most cases, scanning one bar code sets the parameter value. For example, to transmit bar code data without the UPC-A check digit, simply scan the **Do Not Transmit UPC-A Check Digit** bar code under *Transmit UPC-A Check Digit on page 11-14*. The digital scanner issues a fast warble beep and the LED turns green, signifying a successful parameter entry.

Other parameters, such as **Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5** require scanning several bar codes. See the individual parameter, such as **Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5**, for this procedure.

Errors While Scanning

Unless otherwise specified, to correct an error during a scanning sequence, just re-scan the correct parameter.

Symbology Parameter Defaults

Table 11-1 lists the defaults for all symbologies parameters. To change the default values, scan the appropriate bar codes in this guide. These new values replace the standard default values in memory. To recall the default parameter values, scan the *Set Default Parameter on page 4-5*.

NOTE See *Appendix A, Standard Default Parameters* for all user preferences, hosts, and miscellaneous default parameters.

Table 11-1 *Parameter Defaults*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
UPC/EAN			
UPC-A	01h	Enable	*11-7*
UPC-E	02h	Enable	*11-7*
UPC-E1	0Ch	Disable	*11-8*
EAN-8/JAN 8	04h	Enable	*11-8*
EAN-13/JAN 13	03h	Enable	*11-9*
Bookland EAN	53h	Disable	*11-9*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (2 and 5 digits)	10h	Ignore	*11-11*
User-Programmable Supplementals Supplemental 1: Supplemental 2:	 F1h 43h F1h 44h		*11-13*
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy	50h	10	*11-13*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID	F1h A0h	Combined	*11-14*
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit	28h	Enable	*11-14*
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit	29h	Enable	*11-14*
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit	2Ah	Enable	*11-15*
UPC-A Preamble	22h	System Character	*11-16*
UPC-E Preamble	23h	System Character	*11-16*
UPC-E1 Preamble	24h	System Character	*11-18*
Convert UPC-E to A	25h	Disable	*11-19*

Table 11-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Convert UPC-E1 to A	26h	Disable	*11-19*
EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend	27h	Disable	*11-20*
Bookland ISBN Format	F1h 40h	ISBN-10	*11-21*
UCC Coupon Extended Code	55h	Disable	*11-22*
Coupon Report	F1h DAh	New Coupon Symbols	*11-23*
ISSN EAN	F1h 69h	Disable	*11-24*
Code 128			
Code 128	08h	Enable	*11-25*
Set Length(s) for Code 128	D1h, D2h	Any Length	*11-25*
GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)	0Eh	Enable	*11-26*
ISBT 128	54h	Enable	*11-27*
ISBT Concatenation	F1h 41h	Disable	*11-28*
Check ISBT Table	F1h 42h	Enable	*11-29*
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy	DFh	10	*11-29*
Code 39			
Code 39	00h	Enable	*11-30*
Trioptic Code 39	0Dh	Disable	*11-30*
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (Italian Pharmacy Code)	56h	Disable	*11-31*
Code 32 Prefix	E7h	Disable	*11-31*
Set Length(s) for Code 39	12h, 13h	2 to 55	*11-32*
Code 39 Check Digit Verification	30h	Disable	*11-33*
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit	2Bh	Disable	*11-33*
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion	11h	Disable	*11-34*
Buffer Code 39	71h	Disable	*11-34*
Code 93			
Code 93	09h	Disable	*11-37*
Set Length(s) for Code 93	1Ah, 1Bh	4 to 55	*11-37*

Table 11-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Code 11			
Code 11	0Ah	Disable	*11-39*
Set Lengths for Code 11	1Ch, 1Dh	4 to 55	*11-39*
Code 11 Check Digit Verification	34h	Disable	*11-41*
Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s)	2Fh	Disable	*11-42*
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)			
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)	06h	Disable	*11-42*
Set Lengths for I 2 of 5	16h, 17h	14	*11-43*
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification	31h	Disable	*11-45*
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit	2Ch	Disable	*11-45*
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN 13	52h	Disable	*11-46*
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)			
Discrete 2 of 5	05h	Disable	*11-46*
Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5	14h, 15h	12	*11-47*
Codabar (NW - 7)			
Codabar	07h	Disable	*11-49*
Set Lengths for Codabar	18h, 19h	5 to 55	*11-49*
CLSI Editing	36h	Disable	*11-51*
NOTIS Editing	37h	Disable	*11-51*
MSI			
MSI	0Bh	Disable	*11-52*
Set Length(s) for MSI	1Eh, 1Fh	4 to 55	*11-52*
MSI Check Digits	32h	One	*11-54*
Transmit MSI Check Digit	2Eh	Disable	*11-54*
MSI Check Digit Algorithm	33h	Mod 10/Mod 10	*11-55*
Chinese 2 of 5			
Chinese 2 of 5	F0h 98h	Disable	*11-55*

Table 11-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Matrix 2 of 5			
Matrix 2 of 5	F1h 6Ah	Disable	*11-56*
Matrix 2 of 5 Lengths	F1h 6Bh F1h 6Ch	1 Length - 14	*11-57*
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	F1h 6Eh	Disable	*11-58*
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	F1h 6Fh	Disable	*11-58*
Korean 3 of 5	F1h 45h	Disable	*11-59*
Inverse 1D	F1h 4Ah	(SR) Regular (DP) Inverse Autodetect	*11-60*
Postal Codes			
US Postnet	59h	Disable	*11-61*
US Planet	5Ah	Disable	*11-61*
Transmit US Postal Check Digit	5Fh	Enable	*11-62*
UK Postal	5Bh	Disable	*11-62*
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit	60h	Enable	*11-63*
Japan Postal	F0h 22h	Disable	*11-63*
Australian Postal	F0h 23h	Disable	*11-64*
Australia Post Format	F1h CEh	Autodiscriminate	*11-65*
Netherlands KIX Code	F0h 46h	Disable	*11-66*
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail	F1h 50h	Disable	*11-66*
UPU FICS Postal	F1h 63h	Disable	*11-67*
GS1 DataBar			
GS1 DataBar-14	F0h 52h	Enable	*11-68*
GS1 DataBar Limited	F0h 53h	Disable	*11-68*
GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level	F1h D8h	Level 3	*11-69*
GS1 DataBar Expanded	F0h 54h	Disable	*11-70*
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN	F0h 8Dh	Disable	*11-70*
Composite			
Composite CC-C	F0h 55h	Disable	*11-71*
Composite CC-A/B	F0h 56h	Disable	*11-71*

Table 11-1 *Parameter Defaults (Continued)*

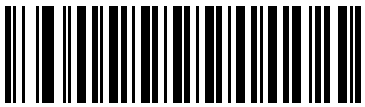
Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Composite TLC-39	F0h 73h	Disable	*11-72*
UPC Composite Mode	F0h 58h	Never Linked	*11-72*
Composite Beep Mode	F0h 8Eh	Beep As Each Code Type is Decoded	*11-73*
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes	F0h ABh	Disable	*11-73*
2D Symbologies			
PDF417	0Fh	Enable	*11-74*
MicroPDF417	E3h	Disable	*11-74*
Code 128 Emulation	7Bh	Disable	*11-75*
Data Matrix	F0h 24h	Enable	*11-76*
Data Matrix Inverse	F1h 4Ch	Inverse Autodetect	*11-77*
Maxicode	F0h 26h	Disable	*11-78*
QR Code	F0h 25h	Enable	*11-78*
QR Inverse	F1h 4Bh	Regular	*11-79*
MicroQR	F1h 3Dh	Enable	*11-79*
Aztec	F1h 3Eh	Enable	*11-80*
Aztec Inverse	F1h 4Dh	Regular	*11-80*
Symbology-Specific Security Levels			
Redundancy Level	4Eh	1	*11-81*
Security Level	4Dh	0	*11-83*
Intercharacter Gap Size	F0h 7Dh	Normal	*11-84*
Report Version			*11-84*
Macro PDF			
Flush Macro PDF Buffer			*11-85*
Abort Macro PDF Entry			*11-85*

UPC/EAN

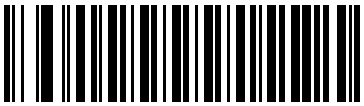
Enable/Disable UPC-A

Parameter # 01h

To enable or disable UPC-A, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable UPC-A**
(01h)



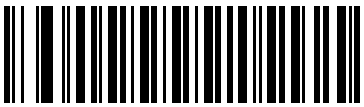
Disable UPC-A
(00h)

Enable/Disable UPC-E

Parameter # 02h

To enable or disable UPC-E, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable UPC-E**
(01h)



Disable UPC-E
(00h)

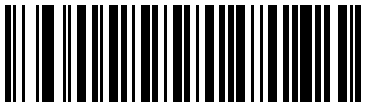
Enable/Disable UPC-E1

Parameter # 0Ch

UPC-E1 is disabled by default.

To enable or disable UPC-E1, scan the appropriate bar code below.

NOTE UPC-E1 is not a UCC (Uniform Code Council) approved symbology.



Enable UPC-E1
(01h)

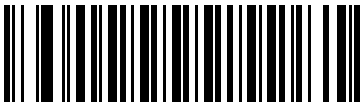
***Disable UPC-E1**
(00h)

Enable/Disable EAN-8/JAN-8

Parameter # 04h

To enable or disable EAN-8/JAN-8, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable EAN-8/JAN-8**
(01h)

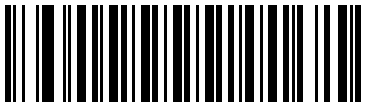


Disable EAN-8/JAN-8
(00h)

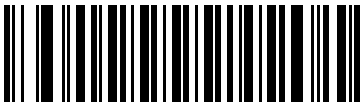
Enable/Disable EAN-13/JAN-13

Parameter # 03h

To enable or disable EAN-13/JAN-13, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable EAN-13/JAN-13**
(01h)



Disable EAN-13/JAN-13
(00h)

Enable/Disable Bookland EAN

Parameter # 53h

To enable or disable Bookland EAN, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Bookland EAN
(01h)

***Disable Bookland EAN**
(00h)

NOTE If you enable Bookland EAN, select a *Bookland ISBN Format on page 11-21*. Also select either Decode UPC/EAN Supplementals, Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN Supplementals, or Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode in *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals on page 11-10*.

Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals

Parameter # 10h

Supplementals are bar codes appended according to specific format conventions (e.g., UPC A+2, UPC E+2, EAN 13+2). The following options are available:

- If you select **Ignore UPC/EAN with Supplementals**, and the digital scanner is presented with a UPC/EAN plus supplemental symbol, the scanner decodes UPC/EAN and ignores the supplemental characters.
- If you select **Decode UPC/EAN with Supplementals**, the digital scanner only decodes UPC/EAN symbols with supplemental characters, and ignores symbols without supplementals.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN Supplementals**, the digital scanner decodes UPC/EAN symbols with supplemental characters immediately. If the symbol does not have a supplemental, the digital scanner must decode the bar code the number of times set via *UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 11-13* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no supplemental.
- If you select one of the following **Supplemental Mode** options, the digital scanner immediately transmits EAN-13 bar codes starting with that prefix that have supplemental characters. If the symbol does not have a supplemental, the digital scanner must decode the bar code the number of times set via *UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 11-13* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no supplemental. The digital scanner transmits UPC/EAN bar codes that do not have that prefix immediately.
  - **Enable 378/379 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode**

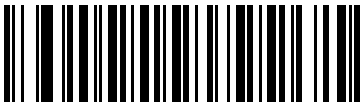
> ***NOTE*** If you select 978/979 Supplemental Mode and are scanning Bookland EAN bar codes, see *Enable/Disable Bookland EAN on page 11-9* to enable Bookland EAN, and select a format using *Bookland ISBN Format on page 11-21*.

  - **Enable 977 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable 414/419/434/439 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable 491 Supplemental Mode**
  - **Enable Smart Supplemental Mode** - applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously.
  - **Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1** - applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with a 3-digit user-defined prefix. Set this 3-digit prefix using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 11-13*.
  - **Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1 and 2 -** applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with either of two 3-digit user-defined prefixes. Set the 3-digit prefixes using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 11-13***.**
  - **Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1** - applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously or the user-defined prefix set using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 11-13*.
  - **Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1 and 2 -** applies to EAN-13 bar codes starting with any prefix listed previously or one of the two user-defined prefixes set using *User-Programmable Supplementals on page 11-13*.

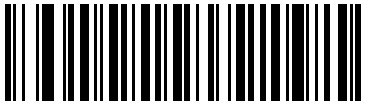
> ***NOTE*** To minimize the risk of invalid data transmission, select either to decode or ignore supplemental characters.

Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (continued)

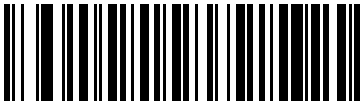
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Only With Supplementals
(01h)



***Ignore Supplementals**
(00h)



Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals
(02h)



Enable 378/379 Supplemental Mode
(04h)

Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode
(05h)

Enable 977 Supplemental Mode
(07h)

Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (continued)

Enable 414/419/434/439 Supplemental Mode
(06h)

Enable 491 Supplemental Mode
(08h)

Enable Smart Supplemental Mode
(03h)

Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1
(09h)

Supplemental User-Programmable Type 1 and 2
(0Ah)

Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1
(0Bh)

Smart Supplemental Plus User-Programmable 1 and 2
(0Ch)

User-Programmable Supplementals

Supplemental 1: Parameter # F1h 43h

Supplemental 2: Parameter # F1h 44h

If you selected a Supplemental User-Programmable option from *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals on page 11-10*, select **User-Programmable Supplemental 1** to set the 3-digit prefix. Then select the 3 digits using the numeric bar codes beginning on *page D-1*. Select **User-Programmable Supplemental 2** to set a second 3-digit prefix. Then select the 3 digits using the numeric bar codes beginning on *page D-1*.

User-Programmable Supplemental 1

User-Programmable Supplemental 2

UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy

Parameter # 50h

If you selected **Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals**, this option adjusts the number of times to decode a symbol without supplementals before transmission. The range is from two to thirty times. Five or above is recommended when decoding a mix of UPC/EAN/JAN symbols with and without supplementals. The default is 10.

Scan the bar code below to set a decode redundancy value. Next, scan two numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error or change a selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.

UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy

UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID Format

Parameter # F1h A0h

Select an output format when reporting UPC/EAN/JAN bar codes with supplementals with AIM ID enabled:

- Separate - UPC/EAN with supplementals transmit as]E<0 or 4><data>]E<1 or 2>[supp data]
- Combined - EAN-8 with supplementals transmit as]E4<data>]E<1 or 2>[supp data]
  All other UPC/EAN with supplementals transmit as]E3<data+supps>

Separate
(00h)

***Combined**
(01h)

Transmit UPC-A Check Digit

Parameter # 28h

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-A check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.

***Transmit UPC-A Check Digit**
(01h)

Do Not Transmit UPC-A Check Digit
(00h)

Transmit UPC-E Check Digit

Parameter # 29h

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-E check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.

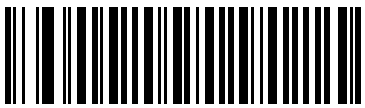
***Transmit UPC-E Check Digit**
(01h)

Do Not Transmit UPC-E Check Digit
(00h)

Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit

Parameter # 2Ah

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the UPC-E1 check digit. It is always verified to guarantee the integrity of the data.



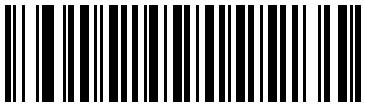
***Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit**
(01h)

Do Not Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit
(00h)

UPC-A Preamble

Parameter # 22h

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. There are three options for transmitting a UPC-A preamble to the host device: transmit System Character only, transmit System Character and Country Code (“0” for USA), and transmit no preamble. Select the appropriate option to match the host system.



No Preamble (<DATA>)
(00h)

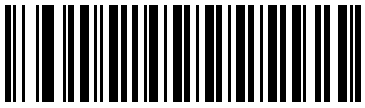
***System Character (<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)**
(01h)

System Character & Country Code
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)
(02h)

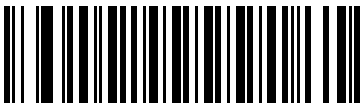
UPC-E Preamble

Parameter # 23h

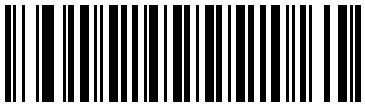
Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. There are three options for transmitting a UPC-E preamble to the host device: transmit System Character only, transmit System Character and Country Code (“0” for USA), and transmit no preamble. Select the appropriate option to match the host system.



No Preamble (<DATA>)
(00h)



***System Character (<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)**
(01h)



System Character & Country Code
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)
(02h)

UPC-E1 Preamble

Parameter # 24h

Preamble characters are part of the UPC symbol, and include Country Code and System Character. There are three options for transmitting a UPC-E1 preamble to the host device: transmit System Character only, transmit System Character and Country Code (“0” for USA), and transmit no preamble. Select the appropriate option to match the host system.

No Preamble (<DATA>)
(00h)

***System Character (<SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)**
(01h)

System Character & Country Code
(< COUNTRY CODE> <SYSTEM CHARACTER> <DATA>)
(02h)

Convert UPC-E to UPC-A

Parameter # 25h

Enable this to convert UPC-E (zero suppressed) decoded data to UPC-A format before transmission. After conversion, the data follows UPC-A format and is affected by UPC-A programming selections (e.g., Preamble, Check Digit).

Disable this to transmit UPC-E decoded data as UPC-E data, without conversion.

Convert UPC-E to UPC-A (Enable)
(01h)

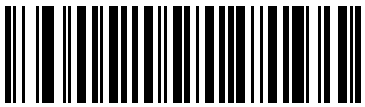
***Do Not Convert UPC-E to UPC-A (Disable)**
(00h)

Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A

Parameter # 26h

Enable this to convert UPC-E1 decoded data to UPC-A format before transmission. After conversion, the data follows UPC-A format and is affected by UPC-A programming selections (e.g., Preamble, Check Digit).

Disable this to transmit UPC-E1 decoded data as UPC-E1 data, without conversion.



Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Enable)
(01h)

***Do Not Convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A (Disable)**
(00h)

EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend

Parameter # 27h

Enable this parameter to add five leading zeros to decoded EAN-8 symbols to make them compatible in format to EAN-13 symbols.

Disable this to transmit EAN-8 symbols as is.

Enable EAN/JAN Zero Extend (01h)

***Disable EAN/JAN Zero Extend (00h)**

Bookland ISBN Format

Parameter # F1h 40h

If you enabled Bookland EAN using *Enable/Disable Bookland EAN on page 11-9*, select one of the following formats for Bookland data:

- **Bookland ISBN-10** - The digital scanner reports Bookland data starting with 978 in traditional 10-digit format with the special Bookland check digit for backward-compatibility. Data starting with 979 is not considered Bookland in this mode.
- **Bookland ISBN-13** - The digital scanner reports Bookland data (starting with either 978 or 979) as EAN-13 in 13-digit format to meet the 2007 ISBN-13 protocol.

***Bookland ISBN-10**
(00h)

Bookland ISBN-13
(01h)

NOTE For Bookland EAN to function properly, first enable Bookland EAN using *Enable/Disable Bookland EAN on page 11-9*, then select either Decode UPC/EAN Supplementals, Autodiscriminate UPC/EAN Supplementals, or Enable 978/979 Supplemental Mode in *Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals on page 11-10*.

UCC Coupon Extended Code

Parameter # 55h

Enable this parameter to decode UPC-A bar codes starting with digit ‘5’, EAN-13 bar codes starting with digit ‘99’, and UPC-A/GS1-128 Coupon Codes. UPCA, EAN-13, and GS1-128 must be enabled to scan all types of Coupon Codes.

***Enable UCC Coupon Extended Code (01h)**

***Disable UCC Coupon Extended Code (00h)**

NOTE See *UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy on page 11-13* to control autodiscrimination of the GS1-128 (right half) of a coupon code.

Coupon Report

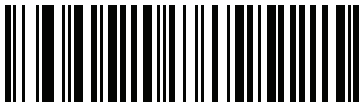
Parameter # F1h DAh

Traditional coupon symbols (old coupon symbols) are composed of two bar codes: UPC/EAN and Code128. A new coupon symbol is composed of a single Databar Expanded bar code. The new coupon format offers more options for purchase values (up to $999.99) and supports complex discount offers such as a second purchase requirement.

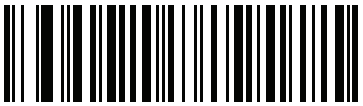
An interim coupon symbol also exists that contains both types of bar codes: UPC/EAN and Databar Expanded. This format accommodates both retailers that do not recognize or use the additional information included in the new coupon symbol, as well as those who can process new coupon symbols.

Scan a bar code below to select one of the following options for decoding coupon symbols:

- **Old Coupon Symbols** - Scanning an old coupon symbol reports both UPC and Code 128, scanning an interim coupon symbol reports UPC, and scanning a new coupon symbol reports nothing (no decode).
- **New Coupon Symbols** - Scanning an old coupon symbol reports either UPC or Code 128, and scanning an interim coupon symbol or a new coupon symbol reports Databar Expanded.
- **Both Coupon Formats** - Scanning an old coupon symbol reports both UPC and Code 128, and scanning an interim coupon symbol or a new coupon symbol reports Databar Expanded.



Old Coupon Symbols
(00h)



***New Coupon Symbols**
(01h)

Both Coupon Formats
(02h)

ISSN EAN

Parameter # F1h 69h

To enable or disable ISSN EAN, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable ISSN EAN
(01h)

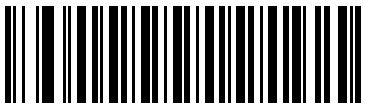
***Disable ISSN EAN**
(00h)

Code 128

Enable/Disable Code 128

Parameter # 08h

To enable or disable Code 128, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable Code 128**
(01h)

Disable Code 128
(00h)

Set Lengths for Code 128

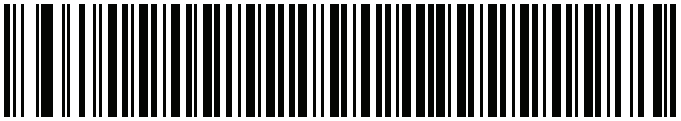
Parameter # L1 = D1h, L2 = D2h

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 128 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range.

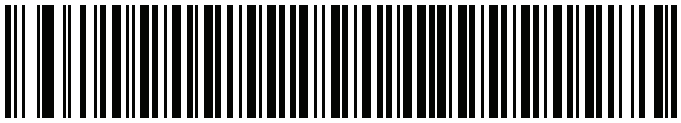
NOTE When setting lengths for different bar code types, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Code 128 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 128 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 128 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Code 128 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 128 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 128 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Code 128 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 128 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 128 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Any Length** - Select this option to decode Code 128 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

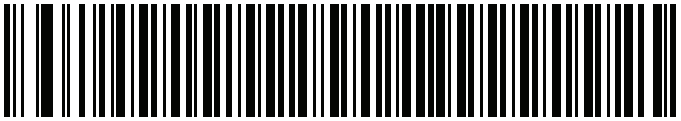
Set Lengths for Code 128 (continued)



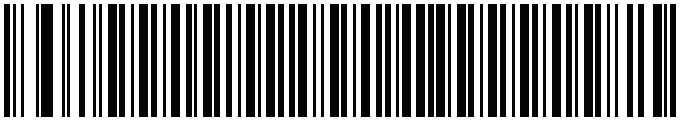
Code 128 - One Discrete Length



Code 128 - Two Discrete Lengths



Code 128 - Length Within Range



***Code 128 - Any Length**

Enable/Disable GS1-128 (formerly UCC/EAN-128)

Parameter # 0Eh

To enable or disable GS1-128, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable GS1-128**
(01h)

Disable GS1-128
(00h)

Enable/Disable ISBT 128

Parameter # 54h

ISBT 128 is a variant of Code 128 used in the blood bank industry. Scan a bar code below to enable or disable ISBT 128. If necessary, the host must perform concatenation of the ISBT data.

***Enable ISBT 128**
(01h)

Disable ISBT 128
(00h)

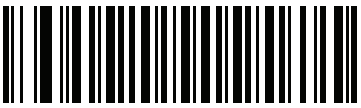
ISBT Concatenation

Parameter # F1h 41h

Select an option for concatenating pairs of ISBT code types:

- If you select **Disable ISBT Concatenation**, the digital scanner does not concatenate pairs of ISBT codes it encounters.
- If you select **Enable ISBT Concatenation**, there must be two ISBT codes in order for the digital scanner to decode and perform concatenation. The digital scanner does not decode single ISBT symbols.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate ISBT Concatenation**, the digital scanner decodes and concatenates pairs of ISBT codes immediately. If only a single ISBT symbol is present, the digital scanner must decode the symbol the number of times set via *ISBT Concatenation Redundancy on page 11-29* before transmitting its data to confirm that there is no additional ISBT symbol.

***Disable ISBT Concatenation**
(00h)



Enable ISBT Concatenation
(01h)

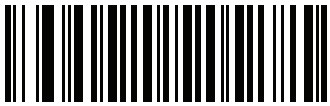
Autodiscriminate ISBT Concatenation
(02h)

Check ISBT Table

Parameter # F1h 42h

The ISBT specification includes a table that lists several types of ISBT bar codes that are commonly used in pairs. If you set **ISBT Concatenation** to **Enable**, enable **Check ISBT Table** to concatenate only those pairs found in this table. Other types of ISBT codes are not concatenated.

***Enable Check ISBT Table (01h)**



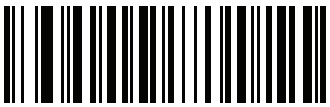
Disable Check ISBT Table (00h)

ISBT Concatenation Redundancy

Parameter # DFh

If you set **ISBT Concatenation** to **Autodiscriminate,** use this parameter to set the number of times the digital scanner must decode an ISBT symbol before determining that there is no additional symbol.

Scan the bar code below, then scan two numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes* to set a value between 2 and 20. Enter a leading zero for single digit numbers. To correct an error or change a selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*. The default is 10.



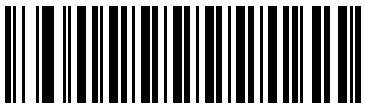
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy

Code 39

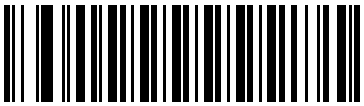
Enable/Disable Code 39

Parameter # 00h

To enable or disable Code 39, scan the appropriate bar code below.



***Enable Code 39**
(01h)



Disable Code 39
(00h)

Enable/Disable Trioptic Code 39

Parameter # 0Dh

Trioptic Code 39 is a variant of Code 39 used in the marking of computer tape cartridges. Trioptic Code 39 symbols always contain six characters. To enable or disable Trioptic Code 39, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Trioptic Code 39
(01h)

***Disable Trioptic Code 39**
(00h)

NOTE You cannot enable Trioptic Code 39 and Code 39 Full ASCII simultaneously.

Convert Code 39 to Code 32

Parameter # 56h

Code 32 is a variant of Code 39 used by the Italian pharmaceutical industry. Scan the appropriate bar code below to enable or disable converting Code 39 to Code 32.

NOTE Code 39 must be enabled for this parameter to function.

Enable Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (01h)

***Disable Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (00h)**

Code 32 Prefix

Parameter # E7h

Scan the appropriate bar code below to enable or disable adding the prefix character “A” to all Code 32 bar codes.

NOTE Convert Code 39 to Code 32 must be enabled for this parameter to function.

Enable Code 32 Prefix (01h)

***Disable Code 32 Prefix (00h)**

Set Lengths for Code 39

Parameter # L1 = 12h, L2 = 13h

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 39 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. If Code 39 Full ASCII is enabled, **Length Within a Range** or **Any Length** are the preferred options.

NOTE When setting lengths for different bar code types, enter a leading zero for single digit numbers.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Code 39 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 39 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 39 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Code 39 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 39 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 39 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Code 39 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 39 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 39 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Any Length** - Select this option to decode Code 39 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Code 39 - One Discrete Length

Code 39 - Two Discrete Lengths

Code 39 - Length Within Range

Code 39 - Any Length

Code 39 Check Digit Verification

Parameter # 30h

Enable this feature to check the integrity of all Code 39 symbols to verify that the data complies with specified check digit algorithm. Only Code 39 symbols which include a modulo 43 check digit are decoded. Enable this feature if the Code 39 symbols contain a Modulo 43 check digit.

Enable Code 39 Check Digit (01h)

***Disable Code 39 Check Digit (00h)**

Transmit Code 39 Check Digit

Parameter # 2Bh

Scan a bar code below to transmit Code 39 data with or without the check digit.

Transmit Code 39 Check Digit (Enable) (01h)

***Do Not Transmit Code 39 Check Digit (Disable) (00h)**

✓ ***NOTE*** Code 39 Check Digit Verification must be enabled for this parameter to function.

Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion

Parameter # 11h

Code 39 Full ASCII is a variant of Code 39 which pairs characters to encode the full ASCII character set. To enable or disable Code 39 Full ASCII, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Code 39 Full ASCII (01h)

***Disable Code 39 Full ASCII (00h)**

NOTE You cannot enable Trioptic Code 39 and Code 39 Full ASCII simultaneously.

Code 39 Full ASCII to Full ASCII Correlation is host-dependent, and is therefore described in the ASCII Character Set Table for the appropriate interface. See the *ASCII Character Set for USB on page 6-16* or the *ASCII Character Set for RS-232 on page 7-19*.

Code 39 Buffering - Scan & Store

Parameter # 71h

This feature allows the digital scanner to accumulate data from multiple Code 39 symbols.

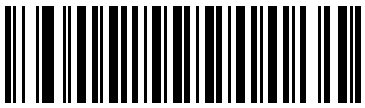
Selecting the Scan and Store option (Buffer Code 39) temporarily buffers all Code 39 symbols having a leading space as a first character for later transmission. The leading space is not buffered.

Decoding a Code 39 symbol with no leading space transmits in sequence all buffered data in a first-in first-out format, plus the “triggering” symbol. See the following pages for further details.

Select **Do Not Buffer Code 39** to transmit all decoded Code 39 symbols immediately without storing them in the buffer.

Code 39 Buffering - Scan & Store (continued)

This feature affects Code 39 only. If selecting **Buffer Code 39**, we recommend configuring the digital scanner to decode Code 39 symbology only.



Buffer Code 39 (Enable)
(01h)

***Do Not Buffer Code 39 (Disable)**
(00h)

While there is data in the transmission buffer, you cannot select **Do Not Buffer Code 39**. The buffer holds 200 bytes of information.

To disable Code 39 buffering when there is data in the transmission buffer, first force the buffer transmission (see *Transmit Buffer on page 11-36*) or clear the buffer.

Buffer Data

To buffer data, enable Code 39 buffering and scan a Code 39 symbol with a space immediately following the start pattern.

- Unless the data overflows the transmission buffer, the digital scanner issues a low/high beep to indicate successful decode and buffering. (For overflow conditions, see *Overfilling Transmission Buffer on page 11-36*.)
- The digital scanner adds the decoded data excluding the leading space to the transmission buffer.
- No transmission occurs.

Clear Transmission Buffer

To clear the transmission buffer, scan the **Clear Buffer** bar code below, which contains only a start character, a dash (minus), and a stop character.

- The digital scanner issues a short high/low/high beep.
- The digital scanner erases the transmission buffer.
- No transmission occurs.

Clear Buffer

NOTE The Clear Buffer contains only the dash (minus) character. In order to scan this command, set Code 39 lengths to include length 1.

Transmit Buffer

There are two methods to transmit the Code 39 buffer.

1. Scan the **Transmit Buffer** bar code below, which includes only a start character, a plus (+), and a stop character.
2. The digital scanner transmits and clears the buffer.
   - The digital scanner issues a low/high beep.

Transmit Buffer

3. Scan a Code 39 bar code with a leading character other than a space.
   - The digital scanner appends new decode data to buffered data.
   - The digital scanner transmits and clears the buffer.
   - The digital scanner signals that it transmitted the buffer with a low/high beep.
   - The digital scanner transmits and clears the buffer.

NOTE The Transmit Buffer contains only a plus (+) character. In order to scan this command, set Code 39 lengths to include length 1.

Overfilling Transmission Buffer

The Code 39 buffer holds 200 characters. If the symbol just read overflows the transmission buffer:

- The digital scanner indicates that it rejected the symbol by issuing three long, high beeps.
- No transmission occurs. The data in the buffer is not affected.

Attempt to Transmit an Empty Buffer

If you scan the **Transmit Buffer** symbol and the Code 39 buffer is empty:

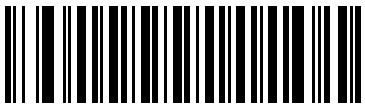
- A short low/high/low beep signals that the buffer is empty.
- No transmission occurs.
- The buffer remains empty.

Code 93

Enable/Disable Code 93

Parameter # 09h

To enable or disable Code 93, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Code 93
(01h)

***Disable Code 93**
(00h)

Set Lengths for Code 93

Parameter # L1 = 1Ah, L2 = 1Bh

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 93 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Code 93 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 93 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 93 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Code 93 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 93 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 93 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Code 93 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 93 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 93 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode Code 93 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for Code 93 (continued)

Code 93 - One Discrete Length

Code 93 - Two Discrete Lengths

Code 93 - Length Within Range

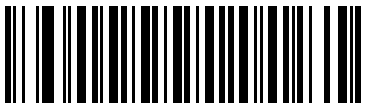
Code 93 - Any Length

Code 11

Code 11

Parameter # 0Ah

To enable or disable Code 11, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Code 11
(01h)

***Disable Code 11**
(00h)

Set Lengths for Code 11

Parameter # L1 = 1Ch, L2 = 1Dh

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Code 11 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Code 11 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 11 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Code 11 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Code 11 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Code 11 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Code 11 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Code 11 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Code 11 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Code 11 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode Code 11 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for Code 11 (continued)

Code 11 - One Discrete Length

Code 11 - Two Discrete Lengths

Code 11 - Length Within Range

Code 11 - Any Length

Code 11 Check Digit Verification

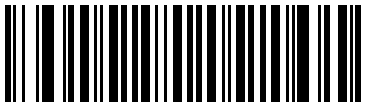
Parameter # 34h

This feature allows the digital scanner to check the integrity of all Code 11 symbols to verify that the data complies with the specified check digit algorithm. This selects the check digit mechanism for the decoded Code 11 bar code. The options are to check for one check digit, check for two check digits, or disable the feature.

To enable this feature, scan the bar code below corresponding to the number of check digits encoded in the Code 11 symbols.

***Disable**
(00h)

One Check Digit
(01h)



Two Check Digits
(02h)

Transmit Code 11 Check Digits

Parameter # 2Fh

This feature selects whether or not to transmit the Code 11 check digit(s).

Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s) (Enable)
(01h)

***Do Not Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s) (Disable)**
(00h)

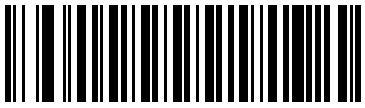
NOTE Code 11 Check Digit Verification must be enabled for this parameter to function.

Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)

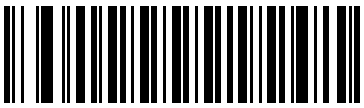
Enable/Disable Interleaved 2 of 5

Parameter # 06h

To enable or disable Interleaved 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below, and select an Interleaved 2 of 5 length from the following pages.



Enable Interleaved 2 of 5
(01h)



***Disable Interleaved 2 of 5**
(00h)

Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5

Parameter # L1 = 16h, L2 = 17h

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for I 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The range for Interleaved 2 of 5 lengths is 0 - 55.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only I 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **I 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode an I 2 of 5 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode I 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **I 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode I 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

NOTE Due to the construction of the I 2 of 5 symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths) for I 2 of 5 applications.

Set Lengths for Interleaved 2 of 5 (continued)

I 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length

I 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths

I 2 of 5 - Length Within Range

I 2 of 5 - Any Length

I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification

Parameter # 31h

Enable this feature to check the integrity of all I 2 of 5 symbols to verify the data complies with either the specified Uniform Symbology Specification (USS), or the Optical Product Code Council (OPCC) check digit algorithm.

***Disable**
(00h)

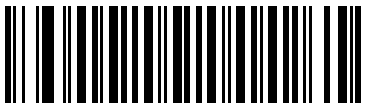
USS Check Digit
(01h)

OPCC Check Digit
(02h)

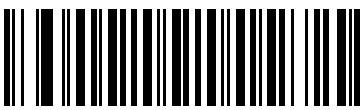
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit

Parameter # 2Ch

Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit I 2 of 5 data with or without the check digit.



Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit (Enable)
(01h)



***Do Not Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit (Disable)**
(00h)

Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13

Parameter # 52h

Enable this parameter to convert 14-character I 2 of 5 codes to EAN-13, and transmit to the host as EAN-13. To accomplish this, the I 2 of 5 code must be enabled, and the code must have a leading zero and a valid EAN-13 check digit.

Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 (Enable)
(01h)

***Do Not Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN-13 (Disable)**
(00h)

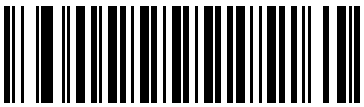
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)

Enable/Disable Discrete 2 of 5

Parameter # 05h

To enable or disable Discrete 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Discrete 2 of 5
(01h)



***Disable Discrete 2 of 5**
(00h)

Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5

Parameter # L1 = 14h, L2 = 15h

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for D 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range. The range for Discrete 2 of 5 lengths is 0 - 55.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only D 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **D 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a D 2 of 5 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode D 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **D 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode D 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

NOTE Due to the construction of the D 2 of 5 symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (**D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths**) for D 2 of 5 applications.

Set Lengths for Discrete 2 of 5 (continued)

D 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length

D 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths

D 2 of 5 - Length Within Range

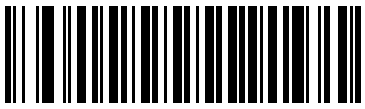
D 2 of 5 - Any Length

Codabar (NW - 7)

Enable/Disable Codabar

Parameter # 07h

To enable or disable Codabar, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Codabar
(01h)

***Disable Codabar**
(00h)

Set Lengths for Codabar

Parameter # L1 = 18h, L2 = 19h

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Codabar to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Codabar symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Codabar symbols with 14 characters, scan **Codabar - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Codabar symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Codabar symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Codabar - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Codabar symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Codabar symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Codabar - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode Codabar symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for Codabar (continued)

Codabar - One Discrete Length

Codabar - Two Discrete Lengths

Codabar - Length Within Range

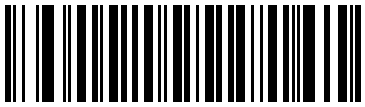
Codabar - Any Length

CLSI Editing

Parameter # 36h

Enable this parameter to strip the start and stop characters and insert a space after the first, fifth, and tenth characters of a 14-character Codabar symbol. Enable this feature if the host system requires this data format.

NOTE Symbol length does not include start and stop characters.



Enable CLSI Editing
(01h)

***Disable CLSI Editing**
(00h)

NOTIS Editing

Parameter # 37h

Enable this parameter to strip the start and stop characters from a decoded Codabar symbol. Enable this feature if the host system requires this data format.

Enable NOTIS Editing
(01h)

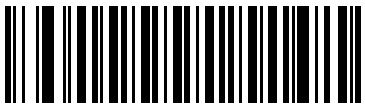
***Disable NOTIS Editing**
(00h)

MSI

Enable/Disable MSI

Parameter # 0Bh

To enable or disable MSI, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable MSI
(01h)

***Disable MSI**
(00h)

Set Lengths for MSI

Parameter # L1 = 1Eh, L2 = 1Fh

The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for MSI to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only MSI symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only MSI symbols with 14 characters, scan **MSI - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only MSI symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only MSI symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **MSI - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a MSI symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode MSI symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **MSI - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode MSI symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

Set Lengths for MSI (continued)

NOTE Due to the construction of the MSI symbology, it is possible for a scan line covering only a portion of the code to transmit as a complete scan, yielding less data than is encoded in the bar code. To prevent this, select specific lengths (**MSI - One Discrete Length, Two Discrete Lengths**) for MSI applications.

MSI - One Discrete Length

MSI - Two Discrete Lengths

MSI - Length Within Range

MSI - Any Length

MSI Check Digits

Parameter # 32h

With MSI symbols, one check digit is mandatory and always verified by the reader. The second check digit is optional. If the MSI codes include two check digits, scan the **Two MSI Check Digits** bar code to enable verification of the second check digit.

See *MSI Check Digit Algorithm on page 11-55* for the selection of second digit algorithms.

***One MSI Check Digit**
(00h)

Two MSI Check Digits
(01h)

Transmit MSI Check Digit(s)

Parameter # 2Eh

Scan a bar code below to transmit MSI data with or without the check digit.

Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) (Enable)
(01h

***Do Not Transmit MSI Check Digit(s) (Disable)**
(00h)

MSI Check Digit Algorithm

Parameter # 33h

Two algorithms are possible for the verification of the second MSI check digit. Select the bar code below corresponding to the algorithm used to encode the check digit.

MOD 10/MOD 11
(00h)

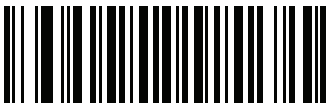
***MOD 10/MOD 10**
(01h)

Chinese 2 of 5

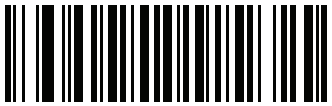
Enable/Disable Chinese 2 of 5

Parameter # F0h 98h

To enable or disable Chinese 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.



Enable Chinese 2 of 5
(01h)



***Disable Chinese 2 of 5**
(00h)

Matrix 2 of 5

Enable/Disable Matrix 2 of 5

Parameter # F1h 6Ah

To enable or disable Matrix 2 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Matrix 2 of 5
(01h)

***Disable Matrix 2 of 5**
(00h)

Set Lengths for Matrix 2 of 5

Parameter # L1 = F1h 6Bh, L2 = F1h 6Ch

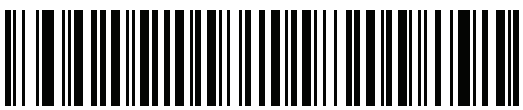
The length of a code refers to the number of characters (i.e., human readable characters), including check digit(s) the code contains. Set lengths for Matrix 2 of 5 to any length, one or two discrete lengths, or lengths within a specific range.

- **One Discrete Length** - Select this option to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing a selected length. Select the length using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols with 14 characters, scan **Matrix 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**, then scan **1** followed by **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Two Discrete Lengths** - Select this option to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing either of two selected lengths. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode only Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing either 2 or 14 characters, select **Matrix 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths**, then scan **0**, **2**, **1**, and then **4**. To correct an error or to change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Length Within Range** - Select this option to decode a Matrix 2 of 5 symbol with a specific length range. Select lengths using the numeric bar codes in *Appendix D, Numeric Bar Codes*. For example, to decode Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing between 4 and 12 characters, first scan **Matrix 2 of 5 - Length Within Range**. Then scan **0**, **4**, **1,** and **2** (enter a leading zero for single digit numbers). To correct an error or change the selection, scan *Cancel on page D-2*.
- **Any Length** - Scan this option to decode Matrix 2 of 5 symbols containing any number of characters within the digital scanner's capability.

***Matrix 2 of 5 - One Discrete Length**

Matrix 2 of 5 - Two Discrete Lengths

Matrix 2 of 5 - Length Within Range



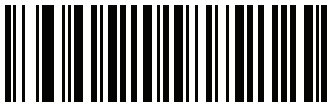
Matrix 2 of 5 - Any Length

Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit

Parameter # F1h 6Eh

The check digit is the last character of the symbol used to verify the integrity of the data. Scan the appropriate bar code below to transmit the bar code data with or without the Matrix 2 of 5 check digit.

Enable Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit (01h)

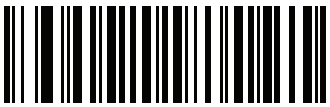


***Disable Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit (00h)**

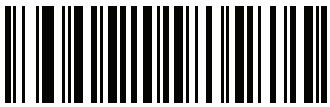
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit

Parameter # F1h 6Fh

Scan a bar code below to transmit Matrix 2 of 5 data with or without the check digit.



Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit (01h)



***Do Not Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit (00h)**

Korean 3 of 5

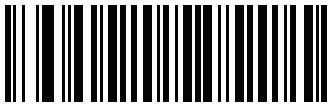
Enable/Disable Korean 3 of 5

Parameter # F1h 45h

To enable or disable Korean 3 of 5, scan the appropriate bar code below.

NOTE The length for Korean 3 of 5 is fixed at 6.

Enable Korean 3 of 5 (01h)



***Disable Korean 3 of 5 (00h)**

Inverse 1D

Parameter # F1h 4Ah

This parameter sets the 1D inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular 1D bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse 1D bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse 1D bar codes.

***Regular**
(00h)

Inverse Only
(01h)

****Inverse Autodetect**
(02h)

✓ ***NOTE*** *For the SR configuration, the Inverse 1D setting default is **Regular**.
For the DP configuration, the Inverse 1D setting default is **Inverse Autodetect.

Postal Codes

US Postnet

Parameter # 59h

To enable or disable US Postnet, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable US Postnet
(01h)

***Disable US Postnet**
(00h)

US Planet

Parameter # 5Ah

To enable or disable US Planet, scan the appropriate bar code below.

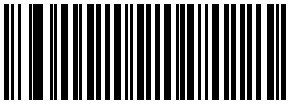
Enable US Planet
(01h)

***Disable US Planet**
(00h)

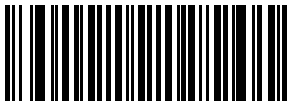
Transmit US Postal Check Digit

Parameter # 5Fh

Select whether to transmit US Postal data, which includes both US Postnet and US Planet, with or without the check digit.



***Transmit US Postal Check Digit (01h)**



Do Not Transmit US Postal Check Digit (00h)

UK Postal

Parameter # 5Bh

To enable or disable UK Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable UK Postal (01h)

***Disable UK Postal (00h)**

Transmit UK Postal Check Digit

Parameter # 60h

Select whether to transmit UK Postal data with or without the check digit.

***Transmit UK Postal Check Digit (01h)**

Do Not Transmit UK Postal Check Digit (00h)

Japan Postal

Parameter # F0h, 22h

To enable or disable Japan Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Japan Postal (01h)

***Disable Japan Postal (00h)**

Australian Postal

Parameter # F0h, 23h

To enable or disable Australian Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Australian Postal (01h)

***Disable Australian Postal (00h)**

Australia Post Format

Parameter # F1h, CEh

To select one of the following formats for Australia Post, scan the appropriate bar code below:

- **Autodiscriminate** (or Smart mode) - Attempt to decode the Customer Information Field using the N and C Encoding Tables.

NOTE This option increases the risk of misdecodes because the encoded data format does not specify the Encoding Table used for encoding.

- **Raw Format** - Output raw bar patterns as a series of numbers 0 through 3.
- **Alphanumeric Encoding** - Decode the Customer Information Field using the C Encoding Table.
- **Numeric Encoding** - Decode the Customer Information Field using the N Encoding Table.

For more information on Australia Post Encoding Tables, refer to the *Australia Post Customer Barcoding Technical Specifications* available at http://www.auspost.com.au.

***Autodiscriminate**
(00h)

Raw Format
(01h)

Alphanumeric Encoding
(02h)

Numeric Encoding
(03h)

Netherlands KIX Code

Parameter # F0h, 46h

To enable or disable Netherlands KIX Code, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Netherlands KIX Code (01h)

***Disable Netherlands KIX Code (00h)**

USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail

Parameter # F1h 50h

To enable or disable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail (01h)

***Disable USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail (00h)**

UPU FICS Postal

Parameter # F1h 63h

To enable or disable UPU FICS Postal, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable UPU FICS Postal (01h)

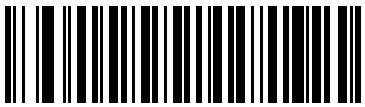
***Disable UPU FICS Postal (00h)**

GS1 DataBar

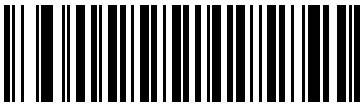
The variants of GS1 DataBar are DataBar-14, DataBar Expanded, and DataBar Limited. The limited and expanded versions have stacked variants. Scan the appropriate bar codes to enable or disable each variant of GS1 DataBar.

GS1 DataBar-14

Parameter # F0h 52h.



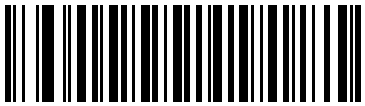
***Enable GS1 DataBar-14**
(01h)



Disable GS1 DataBar 14
(00h)

GS1 DataBar Limited

Parameter # F0h 53h.



Enable GS1 DataBar Limited
(01h)

***Disable GS1 DataBar Limited**
(00h)

GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level

Parameter # F1h D8h

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for GS1 DataBar Limited bar codes. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness. Increasing the level of security may result in reduced aggressiveness in scanning, so choose only that level of security necessary.

- Level 1 – No clear margin required. This complies with the original GS1 standard, yet might result in erroneous decoding of the DataBar Limited bar code when scanning some UPC symbols that start with digits “9” and “7”
- Level 2 – Automatic risk detection. This level of security may result in erroneous decoding of DataBar Limited bar codes when scanning some UPC symbols. The scanner defaults to Level 3, otherwise to Level 1.
- Level 3 – Security level reflects newly proposed GS1 standard that requires a 5 times trailing clear margin.
- Level 4 – Security level extends beyond the standard required by GS1. This level of security requires a 5 times leading and trailing clear margin.

GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 1
(01h)

GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 2
(02h)

***GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 3**
(03h)

GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level 4
(04h)

GS1 DataBar Expanded

Parameter # F0h 54h.

Enable GS1 DataBar Expanded (01h)

***Disable GS1 DataBar Expanded (00h)**

Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN

Parameter # F0h, 8Dh

This parameter only applies to GS1 DataBar-14 and GS1 DataBar Limited symbols not decoded as part of a Composite symbol. Enable this to strip the leading '010' from DataBar-14 and DataBar Limited symbols encoding a single zero as the first digit, and report the bar code as EAN-13.

For bar codes beginning with two or more zeros but not six zeros, this parameter strips the leading '0100' and reports the bar code as UPC-A. The UPC-A Preamble parameter that transmits the system character and country code applies to converted bar codes. Note that neither the system character nor the check digit can be stripped.

Enable Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN (01h)

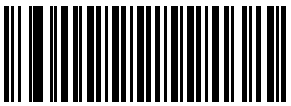
***Disable Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN (00h)**

Composite

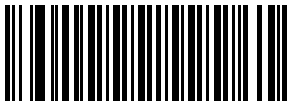
Composite CC-C

Parameter # F0h 55h

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type CC-C.



Enable CC-C
(01h)



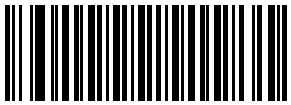
***Disable CC-C**
(00h)

Composite CC-A/B

Parameter # F0h 56h

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type CC-A/B.

Enable CC-A/B
(01h)

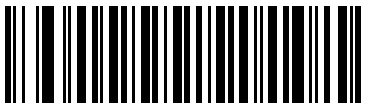


***Disable CC-A/B**
(00h)

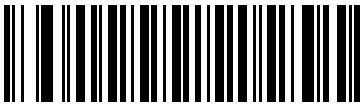
Composite TLC-39

Parameter # F0h 73h

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Composite bar codes of type TLC-39.



Enable TLC39
(01h)



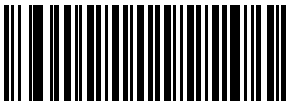
***Disable TLC39**
(00h)

UPC Composite Mode

Parameter # F0h 58h

Select an option for linking UPC symbols with a 2D symbol during transmission as if they were one symbol:

- Select **UPC Never Linked** to transmit UPC bar codes regardless of whether a 2D symbol is detected.
- Select **UPC Always Linked** to transmit UPC bar codes and the 2D portion.
  If 2D is not present, the UPC bar code does not transmit.
- If you select **Autodiscriminate UPC Composites**, the digital scanner determines if there is a 2D portion, then transmits the UPC, as well as the 2D portion if present.



***UPC Never Linked**
(00h)

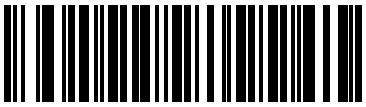
UPC Always Linked
(01h)

Autodiscriminate UPC Composites
(02h)

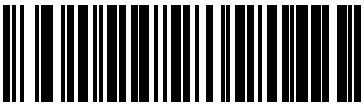
Composite Beep Mode

Parameter # F0h, 8Eh

To select the number of decode beeps when a composite bar code is decoded, scan the appropriate bar code.



Single Beep after both are decoded (00h)



***Beep as each code type is decoded (01h)**

Double Beep after both are decoded (02h)

GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes

Parameter # F0h, ABh

Select whether to enable or disable this mode.

Enable GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes (01h)

***Disable GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes (00h)**

2D Symbologies

Enable/Disable PDF417

Parameter # 0Fh

To enable or disable PDF417, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable PDF417**
(01h)

Disable PDF417
(00h)

Enable/Disable MicroPDF417

Parameter # E3h

To enable or disable MicroPDF417, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable MicroPDF417
(01h)

***Disable MicroPDF417**
(00h)

Code 128 Emulation

Parameter # 7Bh

Enable this parameter to transmit data from certain MicroPDF417 symbols as Code 128. *AIM Code ID Character (01h) on page 4-48* must be enabled for this parameter to work.

Enable Code 128 Emulation to transmit these MicroPDF417 symbols with one of the following prefixes:

]C1	if the first codeword is 903-905
]C2	if the first codeword is 908 or 909
]C0	if the first codeword is 910 or 911

Disable Code 128 Emulation to transmit these MicroPDF417 symbols with one of the following prefixes:

]L3	if the first codeword is 903-905
]L4	if the first codeword is 908 or 909
]L5	if the first codeword is 910 or 911

Scan a bar code below to enable or disable Code 128 Emulation.

NOTE Linked MicroPDF codewords 906, 907, 912, 914, and 915 are not supported. Use GS1 Composites instead.

Enable Code 128 Emulation (01h)

***Disable Code 128 Emulation (00h)**

Data Matrix

Parameter # F0h, 24h

To enable or disable Data Matrix, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable Data Matrix**
(01h)

Disable Data Matrix
(00h)

Data Matrix Inverse

Parameter # F1h 4Ch

This parameter sets the Data Matrix inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular Data Matrix bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse Data Matrix bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse Data Matrix bar codes.

***Regular**
(00h)

Inverse Only
(01h)

****Inverse Autodetect**
(02h)

✓ ***NOTE*** *For the SR configuration, the default is **Regular**. **If DPM Scanning is enabled, the scanner behaves as if the Data Matrix **Inverse Autodetect** setting is selected. When you disable DPM Scanning, the previous (user-selected) **Data Matrix Inverse** setting remains in effect.

Maxicode

Parameter # F0h, 26h

To enable or disable Maxicode, scan the appropriate bar code below.

Enable Maxicode
(01h)

***Disable Maxicode**
(00h)

QR Code

Parameter # F0h,25h

To enable or disable QR Code, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable QR Code**
(01h)

Disable QR Code
(00h)

QR Inverse

Parameter # F1h 4Bh

This parameter sets the QR inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular QR bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse QR bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse QR bar codes.

***Regular**
(00h)

Inverse Only
(01h)

Inverse Autodetect
(02h)

MicroQR

Parameter # F1h 3Dh

To enable or disable MicroQR, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable MicroQR**
(01h)

Disable MicroQR
(00h)

Aztec

Parameter # F1h 3Eh

To enable or disable Aztec, scan the appropriate bar code below.

***Enable Aztec**
(01h)

Disable Aztec
(00h)

Aztec Inverse

Parameter # F1h 4Dh

This parameter sets the Aztec inverse decoder setting. Options are:

- **Regular Only** - the digital scanner decodes regular Aztec bar codes only.
- **Inverse Only** - the digital scanner decodes inverse Aztec bar codes only.
- **Inverse Autodetect** - the digital scanner decodes both regular and inverse Aztec bar codes.

***Regular**
(00h)

Inverse Only
(01h)

Inverse Autodetect
(02h)

Redundancy Level

Parameter # 4Eh

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode redundancy. Select higher redundancy levels for decreasing levels of bar code quality. As redundancy levels increase, the digital scanner's aggressiveness decreases.

Select the redundancy level appropriate for the bar code quality.

Redundancy Level 1

The following code types must be successfully read twice before being decoded:

Table 11-2 *Redundancy Level 1 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
Codabar	8 characters or less
MSI	4 characters or less
D 2 of 5	8 characters or less
I 2 of 5	8 characters or less

Redundancy Level 2

The following code types must be successfully read twice before being decoded:

Table 11-3 *Redundancy Level 2 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
All	All

Redundancy Level 3

Code types other than the following must be successfully read twice before being decoded. The following codes must be read three times:

Table 11-4 *Redundancy Level 3 Codes*

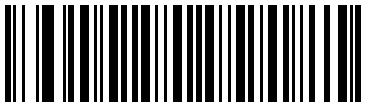
Code Type	Code Length
MSI	4 characters or less
D 2 of 5	8 characters or less
I 2 of 5	8 characters or less
Codabar	8 characters or less

Redundancy Level 4

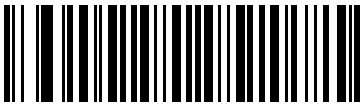
The following code types must be successfully read three times before being decoded:

Table 11-5 *Redundancy Level 4 Codes*

Code Type	Code Length
All	All



***Redundancy Level 1**
(01h)



Redundancy Level 2
(02h)

Redundancy Level 3
(03h)

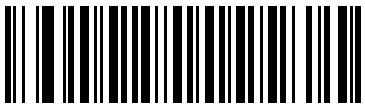
Redundancy Level 4
(04h)

Security Level

Parameter # 4Dh

The digital scanner offers four levels of decode security for delta bar codes, which include the Code 128 family, UPC/EAN, and Code 93. Select increasing levels of security for decreasing levels of bar code quality. There is an inverse relationship between security and digital scanner aggressiveness, so choose only that level of security necessary for any given application.

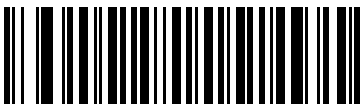
- **Security Level 0:** This setting allows the digital scanner to operate in its most aggressive state, while providing sufficient security in decoding most “in-spec” bar codes.
- **Security Level 1:** This default setting eliminates most misdecodes.
- **Security Level 2:** Select this option if Security level 1 fails to eliminate misdecodes.
- **Security Level 3:** If you selected Security Level 2 and misdecodes still occur, select this security level. Be advised, selecting this option is an extreme measure against mis-decoding severely out of spec bar codes. Selecting this level of security significantly impairs the decoding ability of the digital scanner. If you need this level of security, try to improve the quality of the bar codes.



***Security Level 0**
(00h)

Security Level 1
(01h)

Security Level 2
(02h)



Security Level 3
(03h)

Intercharacter Gap Size

Parameter # F0h, 7Dh

The Code 39 and Codabar symbologies have an intercharacter gap that is typically quite small. Due to various bar code-printing technologies, this gap can grow larger than the maximum size allowed, preventing the digital scanner from decoding the symbol. If this problem occurs, scan the **Large Intercharacter Gaps** parameter to tolerate these out-of-specification bar codes.

***Normal Intercharacter Gaps (06h)**

Large Intercharacter Gaps (0Ah)

Report Version

Scan the bar code below to report the version of software installed in the digital scanner.

Report Software Version

Macro PDF Features

Macro PDF is a special feature for concatenating multiple PDF symbols into one file. The scanner can decode symbols that are encoded with this feature, and can store more than 64 Kb of decoded data stored in up to 50 MacroPDF symbols.

CAUTION When printing, keep each Macro PDF sequence separate, as each sequence has unique identifiers. Do not mix bar codes from several Macro PDF sequences, even if they encode the same data. When scanning Macro PDF sequences, scan the entire Macro PDF sequence without interruption. If, when scanning a mixed sequence, the digital scanner emits two long low beeps (Low/Low) this indicates an inconsistent file ID or inconsistent symbology error.

Flush Macro Buffer

This flushes the buffer of all decoded Macro PDF data stored to that point, transmits it to the host device, and aborts from Macro PDF mode.

Flush Macro PDF Buffer

Abort Macro PDF Entry

This clears all currently-stored Macro PDF data in the buffer without transmission and aborts from Macro PDF mode.

Abort Macro PDF Entry

Chapter 12 123Scan2

Introduction

123Scan² is an easy-to-use, PC-based software tool that enables rapid and easy customized setup of Motorola scanners.

123Scan² uses a wizard tool to guide users through a streamlined set up process. Settings are saved in a configuration file that can be distributed via e-mail, electronically downloaded via a USB cable, or used to generate a sheet of scannable programming bar codes.

Additionally 123Scan² can upgrade scanner firmware, check online to enable support for newly released products, generate a collection of multi-setting bar codes if the number of settings is very large, stage large number of scanners simultaneously, generate reports with asset tracking information and create custom products.

Communication with 123Scan^2

To communicate with the 123Scan² program which runs on a host computer running a Windows XP SP2 and Windows 7 operating system, use a USB cable to connect the scanner cradle to the host computer (see *Connecting a USB Interface on page 6-2*).

123Scan^2 Requirements

- Host computer with Windows XP SP2 or Windows 7
- Scanner
- Cradle (cordless scanning only)
- USB cable.

For more information on123Scan², go to:

http://www.motorolasolutions.com/123Scan2.

Scanner SDK, Other Software Tools, and Videos

Tackle all your scanner programming needs with our diversified set of software tools. Whether you need to simply stage a device, or develop a fully featured application with image and data capture as well as asset management, these tools help you every step of the way. To download any of the free tools listed below, go to: www.MotorolaSolutions.com/ScannerSoftware.

- 123Scan2 Configuration Utility (described in this chapter)
- Scanner SDK for Windows
- How-to-Videos
- Virtual Com Port Driver
- OPOS Driver
- JPOS Driver
- Scanner User Documentation
- Archive of Older Drivers.

Chapter 13 Advanced Data Formatting

Introduction

Advanced Data Formatting (ADF) is a means of customizing data before transmission to the host device. Use ADF to edit scan data to suit requirements. Implement ADF by scanning a related series of bar codes which program the digital scanner with ADF rules.

For information and programming bar codes for ADF, refer to the *Advanced Data Formatting Programmer Guide*, p/n 72E-69680-xx.

Appendix A Standard Default Parameters

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
User Preferences			
Set Default Parameter		Set Defaults	*4-5*
Parameter Bar Code Scanning	ECh	Enable	*4-6*
Decode Pager Motor Enable	F1h 65h	Enable	*4-7*
Decode Pager Motor Duration	F1h 72h	500 msec	*4-7*
Trigger Mode	8Ah	Level (Standard)	*4-9*
Beep After Good Decode	38h	Enable	*4-11*
Beeper Tone	91h	Medium	*4-12*
Beeper Volume	8Ch	High	*4-11*
Beeper Duration	F1 74h	Medium	*4-13*
Suppress Power-up Beeps	F1h D1h	Do Not Suppress	*4-13*
Hands-Free Mode	F1h 76h	Enable	*4-14*
Presentation Performance Mode	F1 8Ah	Standard	*4-14*
Time Delay to Presentation Idle Mode	F1 97h	1 Minute	*4-16*
Time Delay to Presentation Sleep Mode	F1 96h	1 Hour	*4-18*
Low Power Mode	80h	Disable	*4-20*
Time Delay to Low Power Mode	92h	1 Hour	*4-21*
Fuzzy 1D Processing	F1h 02h	Enable	*4-23*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Picklist Mode	F0h 92h	Disabled Always	*4-24*
PDF Prioritization	F1h CFh	Disable	*4-25*
PDF Prioritization Timeout	F1h D0h	200 ms	*4-26*
DPM Scanning	F1h 09h	Enable	*4-27*
Continuous Bar Code Read	F1 89h	Disable	*4-28*
Decode Session Timeout	88h	9.9 Sec	*4-28*
Timeout Between Decodes, Same Symbol	89h	0.5 Sec	*4-29*
Timeout Between Decodes, Different Symbols	90h	0.2 Sec	*4-29*
Hand-Held Decode Aiming Pattern	F0h 32h	Enable	*4-30*
Hands-Free Decode Aiming Pattern	F1h 4Eh	Enable for PDF	*4-31*
Presentation Mode Field of View	F1h 61h	Full	*4-32*
Mobile Phone/Display Mode	F1h CCh	Disable	*4-33*
Decoding Illumination	F0h, 2Ah	Enable	*4-34*
Torch Mode	F1h EBh	Enable	*4-35*
Smart LED Mode	F1h ECh	Enable	*4-36*
Focus Mode	F0h A6h	Auto-Ranging	*4-37*
Multicode Mode	F1h, A5h	Disable	*4-36*
Multicode Expression	F1h, 95h	1	*4-39*
Multicode Mode Concatenation	F1h, CDh	Disable	*4-44*
Multicode Concatenation Symbology	F1h, D2h	Concatenate as PDF417	*4-45*
Miscellaneous Options			
Transmit Code ID Character	2Dh	None	*4-48*
Prefix Value	63h, 69h	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-49*
Suffix 1 Value Suffix 2 Value	62h 68h 64h 6Ah	7013 <CR><LF>	*4-49*
Scan Data Transmission Format	EBh	Data as is	*4-50*
FN1 Substitution Values	67h 6Dh	Set	*4-51*
Transmit “No Read” Message	5Eh	Disable	*4-52*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
UID Parsing	n/a	Disable	*4-53*
Imaging Preferences			
Operational Modes	N/A	N/A	*5-4*
Image Capture Illumination	F0h 69h	Enable	*5-5*
Gain / Exposure Priority for Snapshot Mode	F1h 32h	Autodetect	*5-6*
Snapshot Mode Timeout	F0h 43h	0 (30 seconds)	*5-7*
Snapshot Aiming Pattern	F0h 2Ch	Enable	*5-7*
Image Cropping	F0h 2Dh	Disable	*5-8*
Crop to Pixel Addresses	F4h F0h 3Bh; F4h F0h 3Ch; F4h F0h 3Dh; F4h F0h 3Eh	0 top 0 left 479 bottom 751 right	*5-9*
Image Size (Number of Pixels)	F0h 2Eh	Full	*5-10*
Image Brightness (Target White)	F0h 86h	180	*5-11*
JPEG Image Options	F0h 2Bh	Quality	*5-11*
JPEG Target File Size	F1h 31h	160 kB	*5-12*
JPEG Quality and Size Value	F0h 31h	65	*5-12*
Image Enhancement	F1h 34h	Off (0)	*5-13*
Image File Format Selection	F0h 30h	JPEG	*5-14*
Bits per Pixel (BPP)	F0h 2Fh	8 BPP	*5-15*
Signature Capture	5Dh	Disable	*5-16*
Signature Capture Image File Format Selection	F0h 39h	JPEG	*5-17*
Signature Capture Bits per Pixel (BPP)	F0h 3Ah	8 BPP	*5-18*
Signature Capture Width	F4h F0h 6Eh	400	*5-19*
Signature Capture Height	F4h F0h 6Fh	100	*5-19*
Signature Capture JPEG Quality	F0h A5h	65	*5-19*
Video View Finder	F0h 44h	Disable	*5-20*
Video View Finder Image Size	F0h 49h	1700 bytes	*5-20*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
USB Host Parameters			
USB Device Type		HID Keyboard Emulation	*6-4*
Symbol Native API (SNAPI) Status Handshaking		Enable	*6-5*
USB Country Keyboard Types (Country Codes)		North American	*6-6*
USB Keystroke Delay		No Delay	*6-8*
USB CAPS Lock Override		Disable	*6-8*
USB Ignore Unknown Characters		Enable	*6-9*
Emulate Keypad		Disable	*6-9*
Emulate Keypad with Leading Zero		Disable	*6-10*
USB Keyboard FN1 Substitution		Disable	*6-10*
Function Key Mapping		Disable	*6-11*
Simulated Caps Lock		Disable	*6-11*
Convert Case		No Case Conversion	*6-12*
USB Static CDC		Enable	*6-12*
USB Polling Interval		8 msec	*6-13*
Quick Keypad Emulation		Disable	*6-15*
RS-232 Host Parameters			
RS-232 Host Types		Standard[1]	*7-6*
Baud Rate		9600	*7-8*
Parity Type		None	*7-9*
Data Bits		8-Bit	*7-9*
Stop Bits		1 Stop Bit	*7-10*
Check Receive Errors		Enable	*7-10*
Hardware Handshaking		None	*7-11*
Software Handshaking		None	*7-13*
Host Serial Response Time-out		2 Sec	*7-15*
RTS Line State		Low RTS	*7-16*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Beep on <BEL>		Disable	*7-16*
Intercharacter Delay		0 msec	*7-17*
Nixdorf Beep/LED Options		Normal Operation	*7-18*
Ignore Unknown Characters		Send Bar Code	*7-18*
IBM 468X/469X Host Parameters			
Port Address		None Selected	*8-4*
Convert Unknown to Code 39		Disable	*8-5*
Keyboard Wedge Host Parameters			
Keyboard Wedge Host Type		IBM PC/AT& IBM PC Compatibles[1]	*9-4*
Country Types (Country Codes)		North American	*9-5*
Ignore Unknown Characters		Transmit	*9-7*
Keystroke Delay		No Delay	*9-7*
Intra-Keystroke Delay		Disable	*9-8*
Alternate Numeric Keypad Emulation		Disable	*9-8*
Caps Lock On		Disable	*9-9*
Caps Lock Override		Disable	*9-9*
Convert Wedge Data		No Convert	*9-10*
Function Key Mapping		Disable	*9-10*
FN1 Substitution		Disable	*9-11*
Send and Make Break		Send	*9-11*
OCR Programming Parameters			
OCR-A	F1h A8h	Disable	*10-3*
OCR-A Variant	F1h ACh	Full ASCII	*10-3*
OCR-B	F1h A9h	Disable	*10-5*
OCR-B Variant	F1h ADh	Full ASCII	*10-6*
MICR E13B	F1h AAh	Disable	*10-9*
US Currency	F1h ABh	Disable	*10-10*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
OCR Orientation	F1h AFh	0^{o}	*10-10*
OCR Lines	F1h B3h	1	*10-12*
OCR Minimum Characters	F1h B1h	3	*10-12*
OCR Maximum Characters	F1h B2h	100	*10-13*
OCR Security Level	F1h 2Ah	80	*10-13*
OCR Subset	F1h AEh	Selected font variant	*10-14*
OCR Quiet Zone	F1h B7h	50	*10-14*
OCR Bright Illumination	F1h BDh	Disable	*10-15*
OCR Template	F1h 23h	54R	*10-16*
OCR Check Digit Modulus	F1h B0h	1	*10-25*
OCR Check Digit Multiplier	F1h BCh	121212121212	*10-26*
OCR Check Digit Validation	F1h B6h	None	*10-27*
UPC/EAN			
UPC-A	01h	Enable	*11-7*
UPC-E	02h	Enable	*11-7*
UPC-E1	0Ch	Disable	*11-8*
EAN-8/JAN 8	04h	Enable	*11-8*
EAN-13/JAN 13	03h	Enable	*11-9*
Bookland EAN	53h	Disable	*11-9*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplementals (2 and 5 digits)	10h	Ignore	*11-10*
User-Programmable Supplementals Supplemental 1: Supplemental 2:	 F1h 43h F1h 44h		*11-13*
UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental Redundancy	50h	10	*11-13*
Decode UPC/EAN/JAN Supplemental AIM ID	F1h A0h	Combined	*11-14*
Transmit UPC-A Check Digit	28h	Enable	*11-14*
Transmit UPC-E Check Digit	29h	Enable	*11-15*
Transmit UPC-E1 Check Digit	2Ah	Enable	*11-15*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
UPC-A Preamble	22h	System Character	*11-16*
UPC-E Preamble	23h	System Character	*11-17*
UPC-E1 Preamble	24h	System Character	*11-18*
Convert UPC-E to A	25h	Disable	*11-19*
Convert UPC-E1 to A	26h	Disable	*11-19*
EAN-8/JAN-8 Extend	27h	Disable	*11-22*
Bookland ISBN Format	F1h 40h	ISBN-10	*11-21*
UCC Coupon Extended Code	55h	Disable	*11-22*
Coupon Report	F1h DAh	New Coupon Symbols	*11-23*
ISSN EAN	F1h 69h	Disable	*11-24*
Code 128			
Code 128	08h	Enable	*11-25*
Set Length(s) for Code 128	D1h, D2h	Any Length	*11-25*
GS1-128	0Eh	Enable	*11-26*
ISBT 128	54h	Enable	*11-27*
ISBT Concatenation	F1h 41h	Disable	*11-28*
Check ISBT Table	F1h 42h	Enable	*11-29*
ISBT Concatenation Redundancy	DFh	10	*11-29*
Code 39			
Code 39	00h	Enable	*11-30*
Trioptic Code 39	0Dh	Disable	*11-30*
Convert Code 39 to Code 32 (Italian Pharmacy Code)	56h	Disable	*11-31*
Code 32 Prefix	E7h	Disable	*11-31*
Set Length(s) for Code 39	12h, 13h	2 to 55	*11-32*
Code 39 Check Digit Verification	30h	Disable	*11-33*
Transmit Code 39 Check Digit	2Bh	Disable	*11-33*
Code 39 Full ASCII Conversion	11h	Disable	*11-34*
Buffer Code 39	71h	Disable	*11-34*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Code 93			
Code 93	09h	Disable	*11-37*
Set Length(s) for Code 93	1Ah, 1Bh	4 to 55	*11-37*
Code 11			
Code 11	0Ah	Disable	*11-39*
Set Lengths for Code 11	1Ch, 1Dh	4 to 55	*11-39*
Code 11 Check Digit Verification	34h	Disable	*11-41*
Transmit Code 11 Check Digit(s)	2Fh	Disable	*11-42*
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)			
Interleaved 2 of 5 (ITF)	06h	Disable	*11-42*
Set Lengths for I 2 of 5	16h, 17h	14	*11-43*
I 2 of 5 Check Digit Verification	31h	Disable	*11-45*
Transmit I 2 of 5 Check Digit	2Ch	Disable	*11-45*
Convert I 2 of 5 to EAN 13	52h	Disable	*11-46*
Discrete 2 of 5 (DTF)			
Discrete 2 of 5	05h	Disable	*11-46*
Set Length(s) for D 2 of 5	14h, 15h	12	*11-47*
Codabar (NW - 7)			
Codabar	07h	Disable	*11-49*
Set Lengths for Codabar	18h, 19h	5 to 55	*11-49*
CLSI Editing	36h	Disable	*11-51*
NOTIS Editing	37h	Disable	*11-51*
MSI			
MSI	0Bh	Disable	*11-52*
Set Length(s) for MSI	1Eh, 1Fh	4 to 55	*11-52*
MSI Check Digits	32h	One	*11-54*
Transmit MSI Check Digit	2Eh	Disable	*11-54*
MSI Check Digit Algorithm	33h	Mod 10/Mod 10	*11-55*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Chinese 2 of 5			
Chinese 2 of 5	F0h 98h	Disable	*11-55*
Matrix 2 of 5			
Matrix 2 of 5	F1h 6Ah	Disable	*11-56*
Matrix 2 of 5 Lengths	F1h 6Bh F1h 6Ch	1 Length - 14	*11-57*
Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	F1h 6Eh	Disable	*11-58*
Transmit Matrix 2 of 5 Check Digit	F1h 6Fh	Disable	*11-58*
Korean 3 of 5	F1h 45h	Disable	*11-59*
Inverse 1D	F1h 4Ah	(SR) Regular (DP) Inverse Autodetect	*11-60*
Postal Codes			
US Postnet	59h	Disable	*11-61*
US Planet	5Ah	Disable	*11-61*
Transmit US Postal Check Digit	5Fh	Enable	*11-62*
UK Postal	5Bh	Disable	*11-62*
Transmit UK Postal Check Digit	60h	Enable	*11-63*
Japan Postal	F0h 22h	Disable	*11-63*
Australian Postal	F0h 23h	Disable	*11-64*
Australia Post Format	F1h CEh	Autodiscriminate	*11-65*
Netherlands KIX Code	F0h 46h	Disable	*11-66*
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail	F1h 50h	Disable	*11-66*
UPU FICS Postal	F1h 63h	Disable	*11-67*
GS1 DataBar			
GS1 DataBar-14	F0h 52h	Enable	*11-68*
GS1 DataBar Limited	F0h 53h	Disable	*11-68*
GS1 DataBar Limited Security Level	F1h D8h	Level 3	*11-69*
GS1 DataBar Expanded	F0h 54h	Disable	*11-70*
Convert GS1 DataBar to UPC/EAN	F0h 8Dh	Disable	*11-70*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Composite			
Composite CC-C	F0h 55h	Disable	*11-71*
Composite CC-A/B	F0h 56h	Disable	*11-71*
Composite TLC-39	F0h 73h	Disable	*11-72*
UPC Composite Mode	F0h 58h	Never Linked	*11-72*
Composite Beep Mode	F0h 8Eh	Beep As Each Code Type is Decoded	*11-73*
GS1-128 Emulation Mode for UCC/EAN Composite Codes	F0h ABh	Disable	*11-73*
2D Symbologies			
PDF417	0Fh	Enable	*11-74*
MicroPDF417	E3h	Disable	*11-74*
Code 128 Emulation	7Bh	Disable	*11-75*
Data Matrix	F0h 24h	Enable	*11-76*
Data Matrix Inverse	F1h 4Ch	(SR) Regular (DPM) Inverse Autodetect	*11-77*
Maxicode	F0h 26h	Disable	*11-78*
QR Code	F0h 25h	Enable	*11-78*
QR Inverse	F1h 4Bh	Regular	*11-79*
MicroQR	F1h 3Dh	Enable	*11-79*
Aztec	F1h 3Eh	Enable	*11-80*
Aztec Inverse	F1h 4Dh	Regular	*11-80*
Symbology-Specific Security Levels			
Redundancy Level	4Eh	1	*11-81*
Security Level	4Dh	0	*11-83*
Intercharacter Gap Size	F0h 7Dh	Normal	*11-84*
Report Version			*11-84*

[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.

Table A-1 *Standard Default Parameters Table (Continued)*

Parameter	Parameter Number	Default	Page Number
Macro PDF			
Flush Macro PDF Buffer			*11-85*
Abort Macro PDF Entry			*11-85*
[1]User selection is required to configure this interface and this is the most common selection.			

Appendix B Programming Reference

Symbol Code Identifiers

Table B-1 *Symbol Code Characters*

Code Character	Code Type
A	UPC-A, UPC-E, UPC-E1, EAN-8, EAN-13
B	Code 39, Code 32
C	Codabar
D	Code 128, ISBT 128
E	Code 93
F	Interleaved 2 of 5
G	Discrete 2 of 5, or Discrete 2 of 5 IATA
H	Code 11
J	MSI
K	GS1-128
L	Bookland EAN
M	Trioptic Code 39
N	Coupon Code
R	GS1 DataBar Family
S	Matrix 2 of 5
T	UCC Composite, TLC 39
U	Chinese 2 of 5

Table B-1 *Symbol Code Characters (Continued)*

Code Character	Code Type
X	ISSN, PDF417, Macro PDF417, Micro PDF417
z	Aztec, Aztec Rune
P00	Data Matrix
P01	QR Code, MicroQR
P02	Maxicode
P03	US Postnet
P04	US Planet
P05	Japan Postal
P06	UK Postal
P08	Netherlands KIX Code
P09	Australian Postal
P0A	USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail
P0B	UPU FICS Postal

AIM Code Identifiers

Each AIM Code Identifier contains the three-character string **]cm** where:

] = Flag Character (ASCII 93)
c = Code Character (see *Table B-2*)
m = Modifier Character (see *Table B-3*)

Table B-2 *Aim Code Characters*

Code Character	Code Type
A	Code 39, Code 39 Full ASCII, Code 32
C	Code 128, ISBT 128, Coupon (Code 128 portion)
d	Data Matrix
E	UPC/EAN, Coupon (UPC portion)
e	GS1 DataBar Family
F	Codabar
G	Code 93
H	Code 11
I	Interleaved 2 of 5
L	PDF417, Macro PDF417, Micro PDF417
M	MSI
Q	QR Code, MicroQR
S	Discrete 2 of 5, IATA 2 of 5
U	Maxicode
z	Aztec, Aztec Rune
X	Bookland EAN, ISSN, Trioptic Code 39, Chinese 2 of 5, Matrix 2 of 5, US Postnet, US Planet, UK Postal, Japan Postal, Australian Postal, Netherlands KIX Code, USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail, UPU FICS Postal

The modifier character is the sum of the applicable option values based on *Table B-3*.

Table B-3 *Modifier Characters*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
Code 39	0	No check character or Full ASCII processing.
	1	Reader has checked one check character.
	3	Reader has checked and stripped check character.
	4	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion.
	5	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion and checked one check character.
	7	Reader has performed Full ASCII character conversion and checked and stripped check character.
	Example: A Full ASCII bar code with check character W, **A+I+MI+DW**, is transmitted as **]A7**AIMID where 7 = (3+4).	
Trioptic Code 39	0	No option specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Trioptic bar code 412356 is transmitted as **]X0**412356	
Code 128	0	Standard data packet, no Function code 1 in first symbol position.
	1	Function code 1 in first symbol character position.
	2	Function code 1 in second symbol character position.
	Example: A Code (EAN) 128 bar code with Function 1 character ^{FNC1} in the first position, AIMID is transmitted as **]C1**AIMID	
I 2 of 5	0	No check digit processing.
	1	Reader has validated check digit.
	3	Reader has validated and stripped check digit.
	Example: An I 2 of 5 bar code without check digit, 4123, is transmitted as **]I0**4123	
Codabar	0	No check digit processing.
	1	Reader has checked check digit.
	3	Reader has stripped check digit before transmission.
	Example: A Codabar bar code without check digit, 4123, is transmitted as **]F0**4123	
Code 93	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Code 93 bar code 012345678905 is transmitted as **]G0**012345678905	
MSI	0	Check digits are sent.
	1	No check digit is sent.
	Example: An MSI bar code 4123, with a single check digit checked, is transmitted as **]M1**4123	

Table B-3 *Modifier Characters (Continued)*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
D 2 of 5	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A D 2 of 5 bar code 4123, is transmitted as **]S0**4123	
UPC/EAN	0	Standard data packet in full EAN format, i.e. 13 digits for UPC-A, UPC-E, and EAN-13 (not including supplemental data).
	1	Two digit supplemental data only.
	2	Five digit supplemental data only.
	3	Combined data packet comprising 13 digits from EAN-13, UPC-A or UPC-E symbol and 2 or 5 digits from supplemental symbol.
	4	EAN-8 data packet.
	Example: A UPC-A bar code 012345678905 is transmitted as **]E0**0012345678905	
Bookland EAN	0	No options specified at this time. Always transmit 0.
	Example: A Bookland EAN bar code 123456789X is transmitted as **]X0**123456789X	
Code 11	0	Single check digit
	1	Two check digits
	3	Check characters validated but not transmitted.
GS1 DataBar Family		No option specified at this time. Always transmit 0. GS1 DataBar-14 and GS1 DataBar Limited transmit with an Application Identifier “01”. Note: In GS1-128 emulation mode, GS1 DataBar is transmitted using Code 128 rules (i.e.,]C1).
	Example: A GS1 DataBar-14 bar code 100123456788902 is transmitted as **]e**0011001234567889O2.	
EAN.UCC Composites (GS1 DataBar, GS1-128, 2D portion of UPC composite)		Native mode transmission. Note: UPC portion of composite is transmitted using UPC rules.
	0	Standard data packet.
	1	Data packet containing the data following an encoded symbol separator character.
	2	Data packet containing the data following an escape mechanism character. The data packet does not support the ECI protocol.
	3	Data packet containing the data following an escape mechanism character. The data packet supports the ECI protocol.
		GS1-128 emulation Note: UPC portion of composite is transmitted using UPC rules.
	1	Data packet is a GS1-128 symbol (i.e., data is preceded with]JC1).

Table B-3 *Modifier Characters (Continued)*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
PDF417, Micro PDF417	0	Reader set to conform to protocol defined in 1994 PDF417 symbology specifications. **Note:** When this option is transmitted, the receiver cannot reliably determine whether ECIs have been invoked or whether data byte 92_{DEC} has been doubled in transmission.
	1	Reader set to follow the ECI protocol (Extended Channel Interpretation). All data characters 92_{DEC} are doubled.
	2	Reader set for Basic Channel operation (no escape character transmission protocol). Data characters 92_{DEC} are not doubled. **Note:** When decoders are set to this mode, unbuffered Macro symbols and symbols requiring the decoder to convey ECI escape sequences cannot be transmitted.
	3	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is 903-907, 912, 914, 915.
	4	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is in the range 908-909.
	5	The bar code contains a GS1-128 symbol, and the first codeword is in the range 910-911.
	Example: A PDF417 bar code ABCD, with no transmission protocol enabled, is transmitted as]L2ABCD.	
Data Matrix	0	ECC 000-140, not supported.
	1	ECC 200.
	2	ECC 200, FNC1 in first or fifth position.
	3	ECC 200, FNC1 in second or sixth position.
	4	ECC 200, ECI protocol implemented.
	5	ECC 200, FNC1 in first or fifth position, ECI protocol implemented.
	6	ECC 200, FNC1 in second or sixth position, ECI protocol implemented.
MaxiCode	0	Symbol in Mode 4 or 5.
	1	Symbol in Mode 2 or 3.
	2	Symbol in Mode 4 or 5, ECI protocol implemented.
	3	Symbol in Mode 2 or 3, ECI protocol implemented in secondary message.

Table B-3 *Modifier Characters (Continued)*

Code Type	Option Value	Option
QR Code	0	Model 1 symbol.
	1	Model 2 / MicroQR symbol, ECI protocol not implemented.
	2	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented.
	3	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol not implemented, FNC1 implied in first position.
	4	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented, FNC1 implied in first position.
	5	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol not implemented, FNC1 implied in second position.
	6	Model 2 symbol, ECI protocol implemented, FNC1 implied in second position.
Aztec	0	Aztec symbol.
	C	Aztec Rune symbol.

Appendix C Sample Bar Codes

Code 39

UPC/EAN

UPC-A, 100%

EAN-13, 100%

Code 128

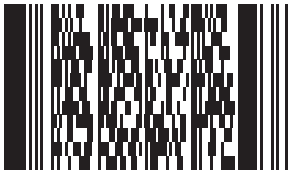
Interleaved 2 of 5

GS1 DataBar-14

NOTE DataBar-14 must be enabled to read the bar code below (see *GS1 DataBar-14 on page 11-68*).

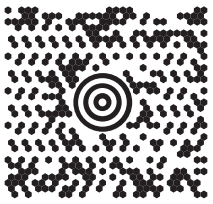
7612341562341

PDF417



Data Matrix

Maxicode



QR Code

US Postnet

UK Postal

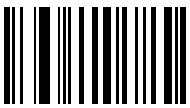
Appendix D Numeric Bar Codes

Numeric Bar Codes

For parameters requiring specific numeric values, scan the appropriately numbered bar code(s).

0

1



2

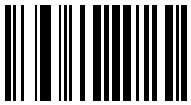
3

4

Numeric Bar Codes (continued)

5

6



7

8

9

Cancel

To correct an error or change a selection, scan the bar code below.

Cancel

Appendix E ASCII Character Sets

Table E-1 *ASCII Value Table*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1000	%U	CTRL 2
1001	$A	CTRL A
1002	$B	CTRL B
1003	$C	CTRL C
1004	$D	CTRL D
1005	$E	CTRL E
1006	$F	CTRL F
1007	$G	CTRL G
1008	$H	CTRL H/**BACKSPACE**[1]
1009	$I	CTRL I/**HORIZONTAL TAB**[1]
1010	$J	CTRL J
1011	$K	CTRL K
1012	$L	CTRL L
1013	$M	CTRL M/**ENTER**[1]
1014	$N	CTRL N
1015	$O	CTRL O

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table E-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1016	$P	CTRL P
1017	$Q	CTRL Q
1018	$R	CTRL R
1019	$S	CTRL S
1020	$T	CTRL T
1021	$U	CTRL U
1022	$V	CTRL V
1023	$W	CTRL W
1024	$X	CTRL X
1025	$Y	CTRL Y
1026	$Z	CTRL Z
1027	%A	CTRL [
1028	%B	CTRL \
1029	%C	CTRL]
1030	%D	CTRL 6
1031	%E	CTRL -
1032	Space	Space
1033	/A	!
1034	/B	“
1035	/C	#
1036	/D	$
1037	/E	%
1038	/F	&
1039	/G	‘
1040	/H	(
1041	/I	)
1042	/J	*
1043	/K	+

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table E-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1044	/L	,
1045	-	-
1046	.	.
1047	/o	/
1048	0	0
1049	1	1
1050	2	2
1051	3	3
1052	4	4
1053	5	5
1054	6	6
1055	7	7
1056	8	8
1057	9	9
1058	/Z	:
1059	%F	;
1060	%G	<
1061	%H	=
1062	%I	>
1063	%J	?
1064	%V	@
1065	A	A
1066	B	B
1067	C	C
1068	D	D
1069	E	E
1070	F	F
1071	G	G

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table E-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1072	H	H
1073	I	I
1074	J	J
1075	K	K
1076	L	L
1077	M	M
1078	N	N
1079	O	O
1080	P	P
1081	Q	Q
1082	R	R
1083	S	S
1084	T	T
1085	U	U
1086	V	V
1087	W	W
1088	X	X
1089	Y	Y
1090	Z	Z
1091	%K	[
1092	%L	\
1093	%M	]
1094	%N	^
1095	%O	_
1096	%W	‘
1097	+A	a
1098	+B	b
1099	+C	c

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table E-1 *ASCII Value Table (Continued)*

ASCII Value	Full ASCII Code 39 Encode Char	Keystroke
1100	+D	d
1101	+E	e
1102	+F	f
1103	+G	g
1104	+H	h
1105	+I	i
1106	+J	j
1107	+K	k
1108	+L	l
1109	+M	m
1110	+N	n
1111	+O	o
1112	+P	p
1113	+Q	q
1114	+R	r
1115	+S	s
1116	+T	t
1117	+U	u
1118	+V	v
1119	+W	w
1120	+X	x
1121	+Y	y
1122	+Z	z
1123	%P	{
1124	%Q	l
1125	%R	}
1126	%S	~

The keystroke in bold transmits only if you enabled Function Key Mapping. Otherwise, the unbold keystroke transmits.

Table E-2 *ALT Key Standard Default Tables*

ALT Keys	Keystroke
2064	ALT 2
2065	ALT A
2066	ALT B
2067	ALT C
2068	ALT D
2069	ALT E
2070	ALT F
2071	ALT G
2072	ALT H
2073	ALT I
2074	ALT J
2075	ALT K
2076	ALT L
2077	ALT M
2078	ALT N
2079	ALT O
2080	ALT P
2081	ALT Q
2082	ALT R
2083	ALT S
2084	ALT T
2085	ALT U
2086	ALT V
2087	ALT W
2088	ALT X
2089	ALT Y
2090	ALT Z

Table E-3 *USB GUI Key Character Set*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3000	Right Control Key
3048	GUI 0
3049	GUI 1
3050	GUI 2
3051	GUI 3
3052	GUI 4
3053	GUI 5
3054	GUI 6
3055	GUI 7
3056	GUI 8
3057	GUI 9
3065	GUI A
3066	GUI B
3067	GUI C
3068	GUI D
3069	GUI E
3070	GUI F
3071	GUI G
3072	GUI H
3073	GUI I
3074	GUI J
3075	GUI K
3076	GUI L
3077	GUI M
3078	GUI N
3079	GUI O
3080	GUI P

Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

Table E-3 *USB GUI Key Character Set (Continued)*

GUI Key	Keystroke
3081	GUI Q
3082	GUI R
3083	GUI S
3084	GUI T
3085	GUI U
3086	GUI V
3087	GUI W
3088	GUI X
3089	GUI Y
3090	GUI Z

Note: GUI Shift Keys - The Apple™ iMac keyboard has an apple key on either side of the space bar. Windows-based systems have a GUI key to the left of the left ALT key, and to the right of the right ALT key.

Table E-4 *PF Key Standard Default Table*

PF Keys	Keystroke
4001	PF 1
4002	PF 2
4003	PF 3
4004	PF 4
4005	PF 5
4006	PF 6
4007	PF 7
4008	PF 8
4009	PF 9
4010	PF 10
4011	PF 11
4012	PF 12
4013	PF 13
4014	PF 14
4015	PF 15
4016	PF 16

Table E-5 *F key Standard Default Table*

F Keys	Keystroke
5001	F 1
5002	F 2
5003	F 3
5004	F 4
5005	F 5
5006	F 6
5007	F 7
5008	F 8
5009	F 9
5010	F 10
5011	F 11
5012	F 12
5013	F 13
5014	F 14
5015	F 15
5016	F 16
5017	F 17
5018	F 18
5019	F 19
5020	F 20
5021	F 21
5022	F 22
5023	F 23
5024	F 24

Table E-6 *Numeric Key Standard Default Table*

Numeric Keypad	Keystroke
6042	*
6043	+
6044	Undefined
6045	-
6046	.
6047	/
6048	0
6049	1
6050	2
6051	3
6052	4
6053	5
6054	6
6055	7
6056	8
6057	9
6058	Enter
6059	Num Lock

Table E-7 *Extended Keypad Standard Default Table*

Extended Keypad	Keystroke
7001	Break
7002	Delete
7003	Pg Up
7004	End
7005	Pg Dn
7006	Pause
7007	Scroll Lock
7008	Backspace
7009	Tab
7010	Print Screen
7011	Insert
7012	Home
7013	Enter
7014	Escape
7015	Up Arrow
7016	Dn Arrow
7017	Left Arrow
7018	Right Arrow

Appendix F Signature Capture Code

Introduction

CapCode, a signature capture code, is a special pattern that encloses a signature area on a document and allows a scanner to capture a signature.

There are several accepted patterns that allow automatic identification of different signatures on the same form. For example, on the federal tax return 1040 form there are three signature areas, one each for two joint filers, and one for a professional preparer. By using different patterns, a program can correctly identify all three, so they can be captured in any sequence and still be identified correctly.

Code Structure

Signature Capture Area

A CapCode is printed as two identical patterns on either side of a signature capture box, as shown in *Figure F-1*. Each pattern extends the full height of the signature capture box.

The box is optional, so you can omit it, replace it with a single baseline, or print a baseline with an "X" on top of it towards the left, as is customarily done in the US to indicate a request for signature. However, if an "X" or other markings are added in the signature box area, these are captured with the signature.

Figure F-1 *CapCode*

CapCode Pattern Structure

A CapCode pattern structure consists of a start pattern followed by a separator space, a signature capture box, a second separator space, and then a stop pattern. Assuming that X is the dimension of the thinnest element, the start and stop patterns each contains 9X total width in 4 bars and 3 spaces. A 7X quiet zone is required to the left and to the right of the CapCode pattern.

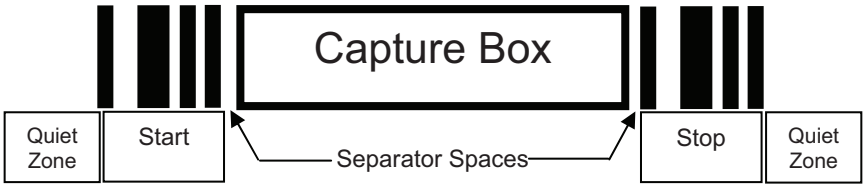


Figure F-2 *CapCode Structure*

The separator spaces on either side of the signature capture box can be between 1X and 3X wide.

Start / Stop Patterns

Table F-1 lists the accepted start / stop patterns. The bar and space widths are expressed as multiples of X. You must use the same pattern on either side of a signature capture box. The type value is reported with the captured signature to indicate the purpose of the signature captured.

Table F-1 *Start / Stop Pattern Definitions*

Bar/Space Patterns							Type
B	S	B	S	B	S	B	
1	1	2	2	1	1	1	2
1	2	2	1	1	1	1	5
2	1	1	2	1	1	1	7
2	2	1	1	1	1	1	8
3	1	1	1	1	1	1	9

Table F-2 lists selectable parameters used to generate the image of the captured signature.

Table F-2 *User Defined CapCode Parameters*

Parameter	Defined
Width	Number of pixels
Height	Number of pixels
Format	JPEG, BMP, TIFF
JPEG quality	1 (most compression) to 100 (best quality)
Bits Per Pixel (not applicable to JPEG format)	1 (2 levels)
	4 (16 levels)
	8 (256 levels)

BMP format does not use compression, JPEG and TIFF formats do.

Dimensions

The size of the signature capture box is determined by the height and separation of the start and stop patterns. The line width of the signature capture box is insignificant.

The thinnest element width, referred to here as X, is nominally 10 mils (1 mil = 0.0254 mm). Select this as an exact multiple of the pixel pitch of the printer used. For example, when using a 203 DPI (dots-per-inch) printer and printing 2 dots per module, the resulting X dimension is 9.85 mils.

Data Format

The scanner output is formatted according to *Table F-3*. Symbol scanners allow different user options to output or inhibit bar code type. Selecting "Symbol ID" as the bar code type for output identifies the CapCode with letter "i".

Table F-3 *Data Format*

File Format (1 byte)	Type (1 byte)	Image Size (4 bytes, BIG Endian)	Image Data
JPEG - 1 BMP - 3 TIFF - 4	See *Table F-1*, last column		(Same bytes as in a data file)

Additional Capabilities

Regardless of how the signature is captured, the output signature image is de-skewed and right-side up.

A scanner that captures signatures automatically determines whether it is scanning a signature or a bar code. You can disable the signature capturing capability in a scanner.

Signature Boxes

Figure F-3 illustrates the five acceptable signature boxes:

Type 2:

Type 5:

Type 7:

Type 8:

Type 9:

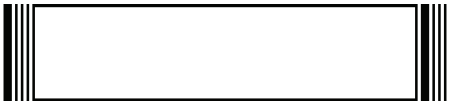


Figure F-3 *Acceptable Signature Boxes*

Glossary

A

Aperture. The opening in an optical system defined by a lens or baffle that establishes the field of view.

API. An interface by means of which one software component communicates with or controls another. Usually used to refer to services provided by one software component to another, usually via software interrupts or function calls

Application Programming Interface. See **API**.

ASCII. American Standard Code for Information Interchange. A 7 bit-plus-parity code representing 128 letters, numerals, punctuation marks and control characters. It is a standard data transmission code in the U.S.

Autodiscrimination. The ability of an interface controller to determine the code type of a scanned bar code. After this determination is made, the information content is decoded.

B

Bar. The dark element in a printed bar code symbol.

Bar Code. A pattern of variable-width bars and spaces which represents numeric or alphanumeric data in machine-readable form. The general format of a bar code symbol consists of a leading margin, start character, data or message character, check character (if any), stop character, and trailing margin. Within this framework, each recognizable symbology uses its own unique format. See **Symbology**.

Bar Code Density. The number of characters represented per unit of measurement (e.g., characters per inch).

Bar Height. The dimension of a bar measured perpendicular to the bar width.

Bar Width. Thickness of a bar measured from the edge closest to the symbol start character to the trailing edge of the same bar.

BIOS. Basic Input Output System. A collection of ROM-based code with a standard API used to interface with standard PC hardware.

Bit. Binary digit. One bit is the basic unit of binary information. Generally, eight consecutive bits compose one byte of data. The pattern of 0 and 1 values within the byte determines its meaning.

Bits per Second (bps). Bits transmitted or received.

Boot or Boot-up. The process a computer goes through when it starts. During boot-up, the computer can run self-diagnostic tests and configure hardware and software.

BOOTP. A protocol for remote booting of diskless devices. Assigns an IP address to a machine and may specify a boot file. The client sends a bootp request as a broadcast to the bootp server port (67) and the bootp server responds using the bootp client port (68). The bootp server must have a table of all devices, associated MAC addresses and IP addresses.

bps. See **Bits Per Second**.

Byte. On an addressable boundary, eight adjacent binary digits (0 and 1) combined in a pattern to represent a specific character or numeric value. Bits are numbered from the right, 0 through 7, with bit 0 the low-order bit. One byte in memory is used to store one ASCII character.

C

CDRH. Center for Devices and Radiological Health. A federal agency responsible for regulating laser product safety. This agency specifies various laser operation classes based on power output during operation.

CDRH Class 1. This is the lowest power CDRH laser classification. This class is considered intrinsically safe, even if all laser output were directed into the eye's pupil. There are no special operating procedures for this class.

CDRH Class 2. No additional software mechanisms are needed to conform to this limit. Laser operation in this class poses no danger for unintentional direct human exposure.

Character. A pattern of bars and spaces which either directly represents data or indicates a control function, such as a number, letter, punctuation mark, or communications control contained in a message.

Character Set. Those characters available for encoding in a particular bar code symbology.

Check Digit. A digit used to verify a correct symbol decode. The scanner inserts the decoded data into an arithmetic formula and checks that the resulting number matches the encoded check digit. Check digits are required for UPC but are optional for other symbologies. Using check digits decreases the chance of substitution errors when a symbol is decoded.

Codabar. A discrete self-checking code with a character set consisting of digits 0 to 9 and six additional characters: (- $: / , +).

Code 128. A high density symbology which allows the controller to encode all 128 ASCII characters without adding extra symbol elements.

Code 3 of 9 (Code 39). A versatile and widely used alphanumeric bar code symbology with a set of 43 character types, including all uppercase letters, numerals from 0 to 9 and 7 special characters (- . / + % $ and space). The code name is derived from the fact that 3 of 9 elements representing a character are wide, while the remaining 6 are narrow.

Code 93. An industrial symbology compatible with Code 39 but offering a full character ASCII set and a higher coding density than Code 39.

Code Length. Number of data characters in a bar code between the start and stop characters, not including those characters.

Cold Boot. A cold boot restarts the mobile computer and erases all user stored records and entries.

COM port. Communication port; ports are identified by number, e.g., COM1, COM2.

Continuous Code. A bar code or symbol in which all spaces within the symbol are parts of characters. There are no intercharacter gaps in a continuous code. The absence of gaps allows for greater information density.

Cradle. A cradle is used for charging the terminal battery and for communicating with a host computer, and provides a storage place for the terminal when not in use.

D

Dead Zone. An area within a scanner's field of view, in which specular reflection may prevent a successful decode.

Decode. To recognize a bar code symbology (e.g., UPC/EAN) and then analyze the content of the specific bar code scanned.

Decode Algorithm. A decoding scheme that converts pulse widths into data representation of the letters or numbers encoded within a bar code symbol.

Decryption. Decryption is the decoding and unscrambling of received encrypted data. Also see, **Encryption** and **Key**.

Depth of Field. The range between minimum and maximum distances at which a scanner can read a symbol with a certain minimum element width.

Discrete 2 of 5. A binary bar code symbology representing each character by a group of five bars, two of which are wide. The location of wide bars in the group determines which character is encoded; spaces are insignificant. Only numeric characters (0 to 9) and START/STOP characters may be encoded.

Discrete Code. A bar code or symbol in which the spaces between characters (intercharacter gaps) are not part of the code.

DRAM. Dynamic random access memory.

E

EAN. European Article Number. This European/International version of the UPC provides its own coding format and symbology standards. Element dimensions are specified metrically. EAN is used primarily in retail.

Element. Generic term for a bar or space.

Encoded Area. Total linear dimension occupied by all characters of a code pattern, including start/stop characters and data.

ENQ (RS-232). ENQ software handshaking is also supported for the data sent to the host.

ESD. Electro-Static Discharge

F

Flash Disk. An additional megabyte of non-volatile memory for storing application and configuration files.

Flash Memory. Flash memory is responsible for storing the system firmware and is non-volatile. If the system power is interrupted the data is not be lost.

FTP. See **File Transfer Protocol**.

H

Hard Reset. See **Cold Boot**.

Host Computer. A computer that serves other terminals in a network, providing such services as computation, database access, supervisory programs and network control.

Hz. Hertz; A unit of frequency equal to one cycle per second.

I

IDE. Intelligent drive electronics. Refers to the solid-state hard drive type.

IEC. International Electrotechnical Commission. This international agency regulates laser safety by specifying various laser operation classes based on power output during operation.

IEC 60825-1 Class 1. This is the lowest power IEC laser classification.

IEEE Address. See **MAC Address**.

Input/Output Ports. I/O ports are primarily dedicated to passing information into or out of the terminal's memory. Series 9000 mobile computers include Serial and USB ports.

Intercharacter Gap. The space between two adjacent bar code characters in a discrete code.

Interleaved 2 of 5. A binary bar code symbology representing character pairs in groups of five bars and five interleaved spaces. Interleaving provides for greater information density. The location of wide elements (bar/spaces) within each group determines which characters are encoded. This continuous code type uses no intercharacter spaces. Only numeric (0 to 9) and START/STOP characters may be encoded.

Interleaved Bar Code. A bar code in which characters are paired together, using bars to represent the first character and the intervening spaces to represent the second.

Interleaved 2 of 5. A binary bar code symbology representing character pairs in groups of five bars and five interleaved spaces. Interleaving provides for greater information density. The location of wide elements (bar/spaces) within each group determines which characters are encoded. This continuous code type uses no intercharacter spaces. Only numeric (0 to 9) and START/STOP characters may be encoded.

I/O Ports. interface The connection between two devices, defined by common physical characteristics, signal characteristics, and signal meanings. Types of interfaces include RS-232 and PCMCIA.

IOCTL. Input/Output Control.

IP Address. (Internet Protocol address) The address of a computer attached to an IP network. Every client and server station must have a unique IP address. A 32-bit address used by a computer on a IP network. Client workstations have either a permanent address or one that is dynamically assigned to them each session. IP addresses are written as four sets of numbers separated by periods; for example, 204.171.64.2.

IPX/SPX. Internet Package Exchange/Sequential Packet Exchange. A communications protocol for Novell. IPX is Novell's Layer 3 protocol, similar to XNS and IP, and used in NetWare networks. SPX is Novell's version of the Xerox SPP protocol.

IS-95. Interim Standard 95. The EIA/TIA standard that governs the operation of CDMA cellular service. Versions include IS-95A and IS-95B. See CDMA.

K

Key. A key is the specific code used by the algorithm to encrypt or decrypt the data. Also see, **Encryption** and **Decrypting**.

L

LASER. Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation.The laser is an intense light source. Light from a laser is all the same frequency, unlike the output of an incandescent bulb. Laser light is typically coherent and has a high energy density.

Laser Diode. A gallium-arsenide semiconductor type of laser connected to a power source to generate a laser beam. This laser type is a compact source of coherent light.

Laser Scanner. A type of bar code reader that uses a beam of laser light.

LCD. See **Liquid Crystal Display**.

LED Indicator. A semiconductor diode (LED - Light Emitting Diode) used as an indicator, often in digital displays. The semiconductor uses applied voltage to produce light of a certain frequency determined by the semiconductor's particular chemical composition.

Light Emitting Diode. See **LED**.

Liquid Crystal Display (LCD). A display that uses liquid crystal sealed between two glass plates. The crystals are excited by precise electrical charges, causing them to reflect light outside according to their bias. They use little electricity and react relatively quickly. They require external light to reflect their information to the user.

M

MIL. 1 mil = 1 thousandth of an inch.

Misread (Misdecode). A condition which occurs when the data output of a reader or interface controller does not agree with the data encoded within a bar code symbol.

N

Nominal. The exact (or ideal) intended value for a specified parameter. Tolerances are specified as positive and negative deviations from this value.

Nominal Size. Standard size for a bar code symbol. Most UPC/EAN codes are used over a range of magnifications (e.g., from 0.80 to 2.00 of nominal).

NVM. Non-Volatile Memory.

O

ODI. See **Open Data-Link Interface**.

Open Data-Link Interface (ODI). Novell's driver specification for an interface between network hardware and higher-level protocols. It supports multiple protocols on a single NIC (Network Interface Controller). It is capable of understanding and translating any network information or request sent by any other ODI-compatible protocol into something a NetWare client can understand and process.

Open System Authentication. Open System authentication is a null authentication algorithm.

P

PAN . Personal area network. Using Bluetooth wireless technology, PANs enable devices to communicate wirelessly. Generally, a wireless PAN consists of a dynamic group of less than 255 devices that communicate within about a 33-foot range. Only devices within this limited area typically participate in the network.

Parameter. A variable that can have different values assigned to it.

PC Card. A plug-in expansion card for laptop computers and other devices, also called a PCMCIA card. PC Cards are 85.6mm long x 54 mm wide, and have a 68 pin connector. There are several different kinds:

- Type I; 3.3 mm high; use - RAM or Flash RAM
- Type II; 5 mm high; use - modems, LAN adaptors
- Type III; 10.5 high; use - Hard Disks

PCMCIA. Personal Computer Memory Card Interface Association. See **PC Card**.

Percent Decode. The average probability that a single scan of a bar code would result in a successful decode. In a well-designed bar code scanning system, that probability should approach near 100%.

PING. (Packet Internet Groper) An Internet utility used to determine whether a particular IP address is online. It is used to test and debug a network by sending out a packet and waiting for a response.

Presentation Mode. Typically used when the digital scanner sits in the scan stand or is mounted on a wall, in this mode, the digital scanner operates in continuous (constant-on) mode, where it automatically decodes a bar code presented in its field of view.

Print Contrast Signal (PCS). Measurement of the contrast (brightness difference) between the bars and spaces of a symbol. A minimum PCS value is needed for a bar code symbol to be scannable. PCS = (RL - RD) / RL, where RL is the reflectance factor of the background and RD the reflectance factor of the dark bars.

Programming Mode. The state in which a scanner is configured for parameter values. See **Scanning Mode**.

Q

Quiet Zone. A clear space, containing no dark marks, which precedes the start character of a bar code symbol and follows the stop character.

QWERTY. A standard keyboard commonly used on North American and some European PC keyboards. “QWERTY” refers to the arrangement of keys on the left side of the third row of keys.

R

RAM. Random Access Memory. Data in RAM can be accessed in random order, and quickly written and read.

Reflectance. Amount of light returned from an illuminated surface.

Resolution. The narrowest element dimension which is distinguished by a particular reading device or printed with a particular device or method.

RF. Radio Frequency.

ROM. Read-Only Memory. Data stored in ROM cannot be changed or removed.

Router. A device that connects networks and supports the required protocols for packet filtering. Routers are typically used to extend the range of cabling and to organize the topology of a network into subnets. See **Subnet**.

RS-232. An Electronic Industries Association (EIA) standard that defines the connector, connector pins, and signals used to transfer data serially from one device to another.

S

Scan Area. Area intended to contain a symbol.

Scanner. An electronic device used to scan bar code symbols and produce a digitized pattern that corresponds to the bars and spaces of the symbol. Its three main components are: 1) Light source (laser or photoelectric cell) - illuminates a bar code,; 2) Photodetector - registers the difference in reflected light (more light reflected from spaces); 3) Signal conditioning circuit - transforms optical detector output into a digitized bar pattern.

Scanning Mode. The scanner is energized, programmed and ready to read a bar code.

Scanning Sequence. A method of programming or configuring parameters for a bar code reading system by scanning bar code menus.

SDK. Software Development Kit

Self-Checking Code. A symbology that uses a checking algorithm to detect encoding errors within the characters of a bar code symbol.

Shared Key. Shared Key authentication is an algorithm where both the AP and the MU share an authentication key.

SHIP. Symbol Host Interface Program.

SID. System Identification code. An identifier issued by the FCC for each market. It is also broadcast by the cellular carriers to allow cellular devices to distinguish between the home and roaming service.

Soft Reset. See **Warm Boot**.

Space. The lighter element of a bar code formed by the background between bars.

Specular Reflection. The mirror-like direct reflection of light from a surface, which can cause difficulty decoding a bar code.

Standard Trigger Mode. The digital scanner uses this mode when out of scan stand or removed from the wall mount. In this mode, aim the digital scanner at a bar code and pull the trigger to decode.

Start/Stop Character. A pattern of bars and spaces that provides the scanner with start and stop reading instructions and scanning direction. The start and stop characters are normally to the left and right margins of a horizontal code.

STEP. Symbol Terminal Enabler Program.

Subnet. A subset of nodes on a network that are serviced by the same router. See **Router**.

Subnet Mask. A 32-bit number used to separate the network and host sections of an IP address. A custom subnet mask subdivides an IP network into smaller subsections. The mask is a binary pattern that is matched up with the IP address to turn part of the host ID address field into a field for subnets. Default is often 255.255.255.0.

Substrate. A foundation material on which a substance or image is placed.

SVTP. Symbol Virtual Terminal Program.

Symbol. A scannable unit that encodes data within the conventions of a certain symbology, usually including start/stop characters, quiet zones, data characters and check characters.

Symbol Aspect Ratio. The ratio of symbol height to symbol width.

Symbol Height. The distance between the outside edges of the quiet zones of the first row and the last row.

Symbol Length. Length of symbol measured from the beginning of the quiet zone (margin) adjacent to the start character to the end of the quiet zone (margin) adjacent to a stop character.

Symbology. The structural rules and conventions for representing data within a particular bar code type (e.g. UPC/EAN, Code 39, PDF417, etc.).

T

TCP/IP. (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) A communications protocol used to internetwork dissimilar systems. This standard is the protocol of the Internet and has become the global standard for communications. TCP provides transport functions, which ensures that the total amount of bytes sent is received correctly at the other end. UDP is an alternate transport that does not guarantee delivery. It is widely used for real-time voice and video transmissions where erroneous packets are not retransmitted. IP provides the routing mechanism. TCP/IP is a routable protocol, which means that all messages contain not only the address of the destination station, but the address of a destination network. This allows TCP/IP messages to be sent to multiple networks within an organization or around the world, hence its use in the worldwide Internet. Every client and server in a TCP/IP network requires an IP address, which is either permanently assigned or dynamically assigned at startup.

Telnet. A terminal emulation protocol commonly used on the Internet and TCP/IP-based networks. It allows a user at a terminal or computer to log onto a remote device and run a program.

Terminal Emulation. A “terminal emulation” emulates a character-based mainframe session on a remote non-mainframe terminal, including all display features, commands and function keys. The VC5000 Series supports Terminal Emulations in 3270, 5250 and VT220.

Terminate and Stay Resident (TSR). A program under DOS that ends its foreground execution to remain resident in memory to service hardware/software interrupts, providing background operation. It remains in memory and may provide services on behalf of other DOS programs.

TFTP. (Trivial File Transfer Protocol) A version of the TCP/IP FTP (File Transfer Protocol) protocol that has no directory or password capability. It is the protocol used for upgrading firmware, downloading software and remote booting of diskless devices.

Tolerance. Allowable deviation from the nominal bar or space width.

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. See **TCP/IP.**

Trivial File Transfer Protocol. See **TFTP.**

TSR. See **Terminate and Stay Resident**.

U

UDP. User Datagram Protocol. A protocol within the IP protocol suite that is used in place of TCP when a reliable delivery is not required. For example, UDP is used for real-time audio and video traffic where lost packets are simply ignored, because there is no time to retransmit. If UDP is used and a reliable delivery is required, packet sequence checking and error notification must be written into the applications.

UPC. Universal Product Code. A relatively complex numeric symbology. Each character consists of two bars and two spaces, each of which is any of four widths. The standard symbology for retail food packages in the United States.

V

Visible Laser Diode (VLD). A solid state device which produces visible laser light.

W

Warm Boot. A warm boot restarts the mobile computer by closing all running programs. All data that is not saved to flash memory is lost.

Index

Numerics

2D bar codes
- aztec 11-80
- aztec inverse 11-80
- code 128 emulation 11-75
- data matrix 11-76
- data matrix inverse 11-77
- maxicode 11-78
- microPDF417 11-74
- microQR 11-79
- PDF417 11-74
- QR code 11-78
- QR inverse 11-79

A

accessories 1-5
- interface cable 1-5
- optional 1-5
- power supply 1-5

ADF 13-1
advanced data formatting 13-1
aiming options
- hand-held decode aiming pattern 4-30, 4-31
- snapshot aiming pattern 5-7
- snapshot mode timeout 5-7
- video view finder 5-20

aiming pattern 2-7, 5-7
- enabling 4-30, 4-31
- orientation 2-7, 2-8

ASCII values
- keyboard wedge 9-13
- RS-232 7-19
- USB 6-16

B

bar codes
- Australia post format 11-65
- Australian postal 11-64
- aztec 11-80
- aztec inverse 11-80
- beep after good decode 4-11
- beeper tone 4-12
- beeper volume 4-11, 4-13
- bits per pixel 5-15, 5-18
- bookland EAN 11-9
- bookland ISBN 11-21
- buffering 11-34, 11-35
- cancel D-2
- Chinese 2 of 5 11-55
- codabar 11-49
- codabar CLSI editing 11-51
- codabar lengths 11-49
- codabar NOTIS editing 11-51
- code 11 11-39
- code 11 lengths 11-39
- code 128 11-25
- code 128 emulation 11-75
- code 128 lengths 11-25
- code 39 11-30
  - transmit buffer 11-36
- code 39 check digit verification 11-33
- code 39 full ASCII 11-34
- code 39 lengths 11-32
- code 39 transmit check digit 11-33
- code 93 11-37
- code 93 lengths 11-37
- composite CC-A/B 11-71
- composite CC-C 11-71
- composite TLC-39 11-72
- continuous bar code read 4-28

convert GS1 databar to UPC/EAN 11-70
convert UPC-E to UPC-A 11-19
convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A 11-19
coupon report 11-23
crop to address 5-9
data matrix 11-76
data matrix inverse 11-77
decode pager motor enable 4-7, 4-8
decode session timeout 4-28
default table 5-2
direct part marking 4-27
discrete 2 of 5 11-46
  lengths 11-48
DPM 4-27
EAN zero extend 11-20
EAN-13/JAN-13 11-9
EAN-8/JAN-8 11-8
flush macro buffer/abort macro PDF entry . . . 11-85
FN1 substitution values 4-51
fuzzy 1D processing 4-23
GS1 DataBar 11-68
GS1 databar expanded 11-70
GS1 databar limited 11-68
GS1 databar-14 11-68
GS1-128 11-26
hand-held decode aiming pattern 4-30, 4-31
hands-free mode 4-14
I 2 of 5 check digit verification 11-45
I 2 of 5 convert to EAN-13 11-46
I 2 of 5 transmit check digit 11-45
IBM 468X/469X
  convert unknown to code 39 8-5
  default parameters 8-3
  port address 8-4
illumination 4-34, 4-35, 5-5
image brightness (target white) 5-11
image cropping 5-8
image enhancement 5-13
image file format 5-14, 5-17
image resolution 5-10
interleaved 2 of 5 11-42
  convert to EAN-13 11-46
  lengths 11-43
inverse 1D 11-60
ISBT 128 11-27
ISBT concatenation 11-28, 11-29
ISBT concatenation redundancy 11-29
ISSN EAN 11-24
Japan postal 11-63
JPEG image options 5-11
JPEG quality and size 5-12
JPEG target file size 5-12
keyboard wedge
  alternate numeric keypad emulation 9-8
  caps lock on 9-9
  caps lock override 9-9
  country keyboard types (country codes) 9-5
  default table 9-3
  host types 9-4
  ignore unknown characters 9-7
  intra-keystroke delay 9-8
  keystroke delay 9-7
Korean 3 of 5 11-59
korean 3 of 5 11-59
low exposure priority for snapshot mode 5-6
low gain priority for snapshot mode 5-6
low power mode 4-20
matrix 2 of 5 11-56
matrix 2 of 5 check digit 11-58
matrix 2 of 5 lengths 11-57
maxicode 11-78
microPDF417 11-74
microQR 11-79
MSI 11-52
MSI check digit algorithm 11-55
MSI check digits 11-54
MSI lengths 11-52
MSI transmit check digit 11-54
multicode mode 4-36, 4-39
Netherlands KIX code 11-66
numeric bar codes D-2
OCR
  bright illumination 10-15
  check digit 10-25
  check digit multiplier 10-26
  check digit validation 10-27
  default table 10-2
  lines 10-12
  maximum characters 10-13
  MICR E13B 10-9
  minimum character 10-12
  OCR-A 10-3
  OCR-A variant 10-3
  OCR-B 10-5
  OCR-B variant 10-6
  orientation 10-10
  parameters 10-3
  quiet zone 10-14
  security level 10-13
  subset 10-14
  template 10-16
  US currency serial number 10-10
pager motor 4-7
parameter scanning 4-6
PDF prioritization 4-25
PDF prioritization timeout 4-26
PDF417 11-74
picklist modes 4-24

postal 11-61
prefix/suffix values 4-49
presentation mode field of view 4-32
presentation performance mode 4-14
QR code 11-78
QR inverse 11-79
RS-232
  baud rate 7-8
  beep on bel 7-16
  check receive errors 7-10
  data bits 7-9
  default table 7-3
  hardware handshaking 7-11, 7-12
  host serial response time-out 7-15
  host types 7-6
  intercharacter delay 7-17
  parity 7-9
  RTS line state 7-16
  software handshaking 7-13, 7-14
  stop bit select 7-16
  stop bits 7-10
samples C-1
scan data options 4-50
set defaults 4-5
signature capture 5-16
signature capture height 5-19
signature capture JPEG quality 5-19
signature capture width 5-19
snapshot aiming pattern 5-7
snapshot mode timeout 5-7
supplementals 11-10
suppress power-up beeps 4-13
symbologies
  default table 11-2
  GS1 DataBar limited 11-69
time delay to low power mode 4-21
time delay to presentation idle mode 4-16
time delay to presentation sleep mode . . .4-18, 4-19
timeout between decodes, different symbols . . 4-29
timeout between decodes, same symbol 4-29
transmit code ID character 4-48
transmit matrix 2 of 5 check digit 11-58
transmit no read message 4-52
transmit UK postal check digit 11-63
transmit US postal check digit 11-62
trigger mode 4-9, 4-10
UCC coupon extended code 11-22
UID 4-53
UK postal 11-62
UPC composite mode 11-72
UPC/EAN
  coupon code 11-22
  supp redundancy 11-13, 11-14
  UPC/EAN/JAN
    supplemental AIM ID format 11-14
    supplemental redundancy 11-13
  UPC-A 11-7
  UPC-A preamble 11-16
  UPC-A/E/E1 check digit 11-14, 11-15
  UPC-E 11-7
  UPC-E preamble 11-17
  UPC-E1 11-8
  UPU FICS postal 11-67
  US planet 11-61
  US postnet 11-61
  USB
    caps lock override 6-8
    country keyboard types 6-6
    default table 6-3
    device type 6-4
    keystroke delay 6-8
    polling interval 6-5, 6-13, 6-14
    quick emulation 6-15
    SNAPI handshaking 6-5
    static CDC 6-12
    unknown characters 6-9
  USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail 11-66
  video image size 5-20
  video view finder 5-20
beeper
  suppress power-up beeps 4-13
beeper definitions 2-2
bullets xvii

C

cables
  installing 1-3
  interface 1-4, 1-5
  removing cables 1-4
  signal descriptions 3-7
character sets
  keyboard wedge 9-13
  RS-232 7-19
  USB 6-16
codabar bar codes
  CLSI editing 11-51
  codabar 11-49
  lengths 11-49
  NOTIS editing 11-51
code 11 bar codes
  code 11 11-39
  lengths 11-39
code 128 bar codes
  code 128 11-25
  GS1-128 11-26
  ISBT 128 11-27

ISBT concatenation 11-28, 11-29
ISBT concatenation redundancy 11-29
lengths 11-25
code 128 emulation bar codes 11-75
code 39 bar codes
buffering 11-34, 11-35
check digit verification 11-33
code 39 11-30
full ASCII 11-34
lengths 11-32
transmit check digit 11-33
code 93 bar codes
code 93 11-37
lengths 11-37
code ID character 4-48
code identifiers
AIM code IDs B-3
modifier characters B-4
Symbol B-1
composite bar codes
composite CC-A/B 11-71
composite CC-C 11-71
composite TLC-39 11-72
UPC composite mode 11-72
configurations xv
connecting
IBM 468X/469X interface 8-2
keyboard wedge interface 9-2
power 1-4
RS-232 interface 7-2
USB interface 6-2
conventions
notational xvii
cropping 5-8, 5-9

D

data matrix bar codes 11-76
default parameters
IBM 468X/469X 8-3
imaging preferences 5-2
keyboard wedge 9-3
OCR 10-2
RS-232 7-3
standard default table A-1
symbologies 11-2
USB 6-3
user preferences 4-2
default table 5-2
direct part marking 2-7
bar codes 4-27
scanning 2-7
discrete 2 of 5 bar codes
discrete 2 of 5 11-46
DPM 2-7
bar codes 4-27
scanning 2-7

E

exposure options
gain / exposure priority for snapshot mode 5-6
illumination 4-34, 4-35, 5-5
presentation mode field of view 4-32

G

gain / exposure priority for snapshot mode 5-6
GS1 DataBar 11-68
GS1 databar
convert GS1 databar to UPC/EAN 11-70

H

host types
keyboard wedge 9-4
RS-232 7-6

I

IBM 468X/469X
connection 8-2
default parameters 8-3
parameters 8-4
illumination 4-34, 4-35, 5-5
image brightness (target white) 5-11
image cropping 5-8, 5-9
image enhancement 5-13
image options
bits per pixel 5-15
cropping 5-8, 5-9
file formats 5-14, 5-17
image brightness (target white) 5-11
image enhancement 5-13
image resolution 5-10
JPEG image options 5-11
JPEG size/quality 5-12
JPEG target file size 5-12
image resolution 5-10
imaging preferences parameters 5-2
interleaved 2 of 5 bar codes
check digit verification 11-45
convert to EAN-13 11-46
transmit check digit 11-45

J

JPEG image options 5-11
size/quality 5-12
JPEG target file size 5-12

K

keyboard wedge
connection 9-2
default parameters 9-3
parameters 9-4
Korean 3 of 5 bar codes 11-59

L

LED definitions 2-4

M

macro PDF 11-85
flush buffer/abort PDF entry 11-85
maintenance 3-1
matrix 2 of 5 bar codes 11-56
check digit 11-58
lengths 11-57
transmit check digit 11-58
maxicode bar codes 11-78
microPDF417 bar codes 11-74
Motorola enterprise mobility support xviii
MSI bar codes
check digit algorithm 11-55
check digits 11-54
lengths 11-52
MSI 11-52
transmit check digit 11-54

N

notational conventions xvii

O

OCR
default parameters 10-2
parameters 10-3
OCR Programming 10-1

P

parameters
decode pager motor enable 4-7, 4-8
parts diagram 2-1
PDF417 bar codes 11-74
PDF prioritization 4-25
pinouts
scanner signal descriptions 3-7
postal codes 11-61
Australia post format 11-65
Australian postal 11-64
Japan postal 11-63
Netherlands KIX code 11-66
transmit UK postal check digit 11-63
transmit US postal check digit 11-62
UK postal 11-62
UPU FICS postal 11-67
US planet 11-61
US postnet 11-61
USPS 4CB/One Code/Intelligent Mail 11-66
power supply 1-5
connecting 1-4
presentation mode field of view 4-32

Q

QR code bar codes 11-78

R

RS-232
connection 7-2
default parameters 7-3
parameters 7-4, 7-6

S

sample bar codes C-1
scanning
aiming 2-7
errors 4-2, 5-2, 11-2
hand-held 2-5
presentation mode 2-5
sequence example 4-2, 5-2, 11-1
service information xviii
setup
connecting a USB interface 6-2
connecting an RS-232 interface 7-2
connecting keyboard wedge interface 9-2
connecting power 1-4
connecting to an IBM 468X/469X host 8-2
installing the cable 1-3
unpacking 1-2
signal descriptions 3-7
signature capture 5-16
bits per pixel 5-18
file format selector 5-17
height 5-19
JPEG quality 5-19

width 5-19
snapshot mode timeout 5-7
specifications 3-5
standard default parameters A-1
support xviii
symbology default parameters 11-2

T

technical specifications 3-5
troubleshooting 3-2

U

unpacking 1-2
UPC/EAN bar codes
bookland EAN 11-9
bookland ISBN 11-21
check digit 11-14, 11-15
convert UPC-E to UPC-A 11-19
convert UPC-E1 to UPC-A 11-19
coupon report 11-23
EAN zero extend 11-20
EAN-13/JAN-13 11-9
EAN-8/JAN-8 11-8
ISSN EAN 11-24
supplementals 11-10
UCC coupon extended code 11-22
UPC-A 11-7
UPC-A preamble 11-16
UPC-E 11-7
UPC-E preamble 11-17
UPC-E1 11-8
USB
connection 6-2
default parameters 6-3
parameters 6-4
user preferences parameters 4-2

V

video view finder 5-20
image size 5-20

Tell Us What You Think...

We'd like to know what you think about this Manual. Please take a moment to fill out this questionnaire and fax this form to: (631) 627-7184, or mail to:

Motorola Solutions, Inc.
One Motorola Plaza M/S B-10
Holtsville, NY 11742-1300
Attention: Advanced Data Capture
Technical Publications Manager

important If you need product support, please call the appropriate customer support number provided. Unfortunately, we cannot provide customer support at the fax number above.

Manual Title:_____
(please include revision level)

How familiar were you with this product before using this manual?

☐ Very familiar ☐ Slightly familiar ☐ Not at all familiar

Did this manual meet your needs? If not, please explain.

_____
_____
_____
_____

What topics need to be added to the index, if applicable?

_____
_____
_____
_____

What topics do you feel need to be better discussed? Please be specific.

_____
_____
_____
_____

What can we do to further improve our manuals?

_____
_____
_____
_____

Thank you for your input—We value your comments.

MOTOROLA

Motorola Solutions, Inc.
One Motorola Plaza
Holtsville, New York 11742, USA
1-800-927-9626
http://www.motorolasolutions.com

Motorola, MOTO, MOTOROLA SOLUTIONS and the Stylized M Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Motorola Trademark Holding, LLC and are used under license. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2012 Motorola Solutions, Inc. All rights reserved.

72E-124801-07 Revision A - March 2012